WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6: C07K 5/062, A61K 38/55

A1

US

US

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 96/28463

(43) International Publication Date: 19 September 1996 (19.09.96)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US96/02684

(22) International Filing Date:

7 March 1996 (07.03.96)

(30) Priority Data:

08/402,287 08/474,052 10 March 1995 (10.03.95)

7 June 1995 (07.06.95)

2313 East Royal Court, Des Peres, MO 63131 (US). DE-VADAS, Balekudru [IN/US]; 2175 Parasol Drive, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). NAGARAJAN, Srinivasan [IN/US]; 16209 Forest Meadows Drive, Chesterfield, MO 63005 (US). BROWN, David, L. [US/US]; 15504 Twingate, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). MCDONALD, Joseph, J. [US/US]; 1036 Johanna Drive, Ballwin, MO 63021 (US).

VAZQUEZ, Michael, L. [US/US]; 233 Saratoga Court,

Gurnee, IL 60031 (US). SIKORSKI, James, A. [US/US];

(60) Parent Applications or Grants

(63) Related by Continuation

US Filed on US Filed on 08/402,287 (CIP)

10 March 1995 (10.03.95) 08/474,052 (CIP)

7 June 1995 (07.06.95)

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): G.D. SEARLE & CO. [US/US]; Corporate Patent Dept., P.O. Box 5110, Chicago, IL 60680-5110 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): GETMAN, Daniel, P. [US/US]; 66 Sunny Hill Court, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). DECRESCENZO, Gary, A. [US/US]; 536 Schrader Farm Drive, St. Peter, MO 63376 (US). FRESKOS, John, N. [US/US]; 7572 York, Clayton, MO 63105 (US). (74) Agents: KEANE, J., Timothy et al.; G.D. Searle & Co., Corporate Patent Dept., P.O. Box 5110, Chicago, IL 60680-5110 (US).

(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published

With international search report.

Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: AMINO ACID HYDROXYETHYLAMINO SULFONAMIDE RETROVIRAL PROTEASE INHIBITORS

(57) Abstract

Selected amino acid hydroxyethylamino sulfonamide compounds of formula (1) are effective as retroviral protease inhibitors, and in particular as inhibitors of HIV protease. The present invention relates to such retroviral protease inhibitors and, more particularly, relates to selected novel compounds, composition and method for inhibiting retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease, prophylactically preventing retroviral infection or the spread of a retrovirus, and treatment of a retroviral infection.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

ÀΜ	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	, HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PŁ	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE '	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgystan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada .	KP.	Democratic People's Republic	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic		of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SG	Singapore
СН	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	Sl	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
СМ	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal:
CN	China	LR	Liberia	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LT	Lithuania	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LU	Luxembourg	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	LV	Latvia	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MC	Monaco	17	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MD	Republic of Moldova	ĽA	Ukrame
ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar	ťG	Uganda
FI	Finland	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FR	France	MN	Mongolia	UZ.	Uzbekistan
GA	Gation	MR	Mauritania	VS	Viet Nam

AMINO ACID HYDROXYETHYLAMINO SULFONAMIDE RETROVIRAL PROTEASE INHIBITORS

RELATED CASE

5

This is a continuation-in-part of co-owned and co-pending application Serial No. 08/402,287, filed March 10, 1995 which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

10

30

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to retroviral protease inhibitors and, more particularly, relates to novel 15 compounds, composition and method for inhibiting retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease. This invention, in particular, relates to amino acid hydroxyethylamine sulfonamide protease inhibitor compounds, composition and method for 20 inhibiting retroviral proteases, prophylactically preventing retroviral infection or the spread of a retrovirus, and treatment of a retroviral infection, e.g., an HIV infection. The subject invention also relates to processes for making such compounds as well as 25 to intermediates useful in such processes.

During the replication cycle of retroviruses, gag and gag-pol gene transcription products are translated as proteins. These proteins are subsequently processed by a virally encoded protease (or proteinase) to yield viral enzymes and structural proteins of the virus core. Most commonly, the gag precursor proteins are processed into the core proteins and the pol precursor proteins are processed into the viral enzymes, e.g., reverse transcriptase and retroviral protease. It has been shown that correct processing of the precursor proteins by the retroviral protease is necessary for assembly of

infectious virons. For example, it has been shown that frameshift mutations in the protease region of the pol gene of HIV prevents processing of the gag precursor protein. It has also been shown through site-directed mutagenesis of an aspartic acid residue in the HIV protease active site that processing of the gag precursor protein is prevented. Thus, attempts have been made to inhibit viral replication by inhibiting the action of retroviral proteases.

10

15

Retroviral protease inhibition typically involves a transition-state mimetic whereby the retroviral protease is exposed to a mimetic compound which binds (typically in a reversible manner) to the enzyme in competition with the gag and gag-pol proteins to thereby inhibit specific processing of structural proteins and the release of retroviral protease itself. In this manner, retroviral replication proteases can be effectively inhibited.

Several classes of compounds have been proposed, 20 particularly for inhibition of proteases, such as for inhibition of HIV protease. Such compounds include hydroxyethylamine isosteres and reduced amide isosteres. See, for example, EP O 346 847; EP O 342,541; Roberts et 25 al, "Rational Design of Peptide-Based Proteinase Inhibitors, "Science, 248, 358 (1990); and Erickson et al, "Design Activity, and 2.8A Crystal Structure of a C2 Symmetric Inhibitor Complexed to HIV-1 Protease," Science, 249, 527 (1990). US 5,157,041, WO 94/04491, WO 94/04492, WO 94/04493, WO 94/05639, WO 92/08701 and US 30 Patent Application Serial No. 08/294,468, filed August 23, 1994, (each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety) for example describe hydroxyethylamine, hydroxyethylurea or hydroxyethyl sulfonamide isostere containing retroviral protease inhibitors.

Several classes of compounds are known to be useful as inhibitors of the proteolytic enzyme renin. See, for example, U.S. No. 4,599,198; U.K. 2,184,730; G.B. 2,209,752; EP O 264 795; G.B. 2,200,115 and U.S. SIR H725. Of these, G.B. 2,200,115, GB 2,209,752, EP 0 264,795, U.S. SIR H725 and U.S. 4,599,198 disclose ureacontaining hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors. EP 468 641 discloses renin inhibitors and intermediates for the preparation of the inhibitors, which include sulfonamidecontaining hydroxyethylamine compounds, such as 3-(t-10 butoxycarbonyl)amino-cyclohexyl-1-(phenylsulfonyl)amino-2(5)-butanol. G.B. 2,200,115 also discloses sulfamoylcontaining hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors, and EP 0264 795 discloses certain sulfonamide-containing hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors. However, it is known that, although renin and HIV proteases are both classified as aspartyl proteases, compounds which are effective renin inhibitors generally are not predictive for effective HIV protease inhibition.

20

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to selected retroviral protease inhibitor compounds, analogs and 25 pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and prodrugs The subject compounds are characterized as amino acid hydroxyethylamine sulfonamide inhibitor compounds. The invention compounds advantageously inhibit retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease. Therefore, this 30 invention also encompasses pharmaceutical compositions, methods for inhibiting retroviral proteases and methods for treatment or prophylaxis of a retroviral infection, such as an HIV infection. The subject invention also 35 relates to processes for making such compounds as well as to intermediates useful in such processes.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with the present invention, there is provided a retroviral protease inhibiting compound of the formula:

5

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n represents 1 or 2;

10 R1 represents alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, cyanoalkyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, $-CH_2CH_2CONH_2$, $-CH_2S(O)_2NH_2$, $-CH_2SCH_3$, $-CH_2S(O)_2CH_3$, -CH2S(O)2CH3, -C(CH3)2SCH3, -C(CH3)2S(O)CH3 or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; preferably, R¹ represents alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, 15 alkynyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl and 1-3 alkoxy carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, -CH2CH2CONH2, -CH2S(O)2NH2, -CH2SCH3, -CH2S(O)CH3, -CH2S(O)2CH3, -C(CH3)2SCH3, 20 -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; more preferably, R1 represents alkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-3 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 3-4 carbon atoms, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, -CH2CH2CONH2, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, $-C(CH_3)_2SCH_3$, $-C(CH_3)_2S(O)CH_3$ or $-C(CH_3)_2S(O)_2CH_3$ radicals; and most preferably, R^1 represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-propynyl or -C(CH3)2S(O)2CH3

30

radicals;

R² represents alkyl, aralkyl, alkylthioalkyl, arylthioalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R² represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl

of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthicalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms; more preferably, R2 represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl or cycloalkylmethyl of 5-6 ring member carbon atoms radicals; even more preferably, R2 represents isobutyl, n-butyl, CH₃SCH₂CH₂-, benzyl, phenylthiomethyl, (2-10 naphthylthio)methyl, 4-methoxy phenylmethyl, 4hydroxyphenylmethyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals; even more preferably, R2 represents benzyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals; most preferably, R2 represents 15 benzyl;

R³ represents alkyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R³ represents radicals of alkyl radical of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 5-8 ring

members or cycloalkylmethyl radical of 3-6 ring members; more preferably, R³ represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl radicals; more preferably R³ represents isobutyl or cyclopentylmethyl radicals;

25

R4 represents aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclo radicals; preferably, R4 represents aryl, benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals; or

30

 ${\sf R}^4$ represents a radical of the formula

$$\sum_{B} \sum_{R}^{R} e^{t}$$

wherein A and B each independently represent O, S, SO or SO_2 ; preferably, A and B each represent O;

10

R⁶ represents deuterium, alkyl or halogen radicals; preferably, R⁶ represents deuterium, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, fluoro or chloro radicals; more preferably R⁶ represents deuterium, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl or fluoro radicals;

R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl or halogen radicals; preferably, R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, fluoro or chloro radicals; more preferably, R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl or fluoro radicals; or R⁶ and R⁷ each independently represent fluoro or chloro radicals; and preferably, R⁶ and R⁷ each represent a fluoro radical; or

15 R^4 represents a radical of the formula

wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and \mathbb{R}^9 represents a radical of formula

20 wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR²¹;

R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aminoalkyl, N-monosubstituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl wherein said substituents are alkyl or aralkyl radicals, carboxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, cyanoalkyl or hydroxyalkyl radicals; preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heteroaralkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, N-mono-substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl

of 2 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are radicals of alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms radicals, carboxyalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkoxycarbonylalkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or hydroxyalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms; more preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, or N-mono-10 substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 3 carbon atoms wherein said substituents are alkyl radicals of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and most preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, benzyl, 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1piperidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperazinyl)ethyl, 2-(4methylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl, 2-(1-morpholinyl)ethyl, 2-(1thiamorpholinyl)ethyl or 2-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethyl radicals;

20 R²¹ represents hydrogen or alkyl radicals; preferably, R²¹ represents hydrogen radical or alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; more preferably, R²¹ represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; and most preferably, R²¹ represents a hydrogen radical; or

25

30

the radical of formula $-NR^{20}R^{21}$ represents a heterocyclo radical; preferably, the radical of formula $-NR^{20}R^{21}$ represents a 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radical; more preferably, the radical of formula $-NR^{20}R^{21}$ represents pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-benzylpiperazinyl, morpholinyl or thiamorpholinyl radicals; and

R²² represents alkyl or R²⁰R²¹N-alkyl radicals;

preferably, R²² represents alkyl or R²⁰R²¹N-alkyl radicals wherein alkyl is 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and more preferably, R²² represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and

preferably R4 represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, benzothiazol-5-yl,

- benzothiazol-6-yl, 2-amino-benzothiazol-5-yl, 2(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-aminobenzothiazol-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino) benzothiazol6-yl, 5-benzoxazolyl, 6-benzoxazolyl, 6-benzopyranyl,
 3,4-dihydrobenzopyran-6-yl, 7-benzopyranyl, 3,4-
- dihydrobenzopyran-7-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl,
 benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 5-benzimidazolyl,
- 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl, 6-quinolinyl, 7-quinolinyl, 6-isoquinolinyl or 7-isoquinolinyl radicals; more preferably, R4 represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-
- dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl,
 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl,
 2-(methoxycarbonylamino) benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-
- 25 (methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl or 2 (methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals; and
 most preferably, R⁴ represents phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl,
 4-hydroxyphenyl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl,
 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-
- benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4benzodioxan-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6yl or 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals;

 R^{10} represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms; preferably R^{10} represents a hydrogen radical;

35

R¹¹ represents alkyl radical of 1-5 carbon atoms, preferably methyl, isopropyl, butyl, secbutyl or isobutyl radicals; hydroxyalkyl radical of 1-4 carbon atoms, preferably hydroxymethyl or hydroxyethyl radicals; alkoxyalkyl radical of 1-4 alkyl carbon atoms, preferably methoxymethyl or methoxyethyl radicals; or hydrogen, benzyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CH2CONH2, -CH2CONH2, -CH2CH2SCH3 or -CH2SCH3 radicals or the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives thereof; more preferably R¹¹ represents a hydrogen radical;

R¹² represents hydrogen, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals; preferably, R¹² represents hydrogen, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms; preferably R¹² represents a hydrogen radical; and

R13 and R14 each independently represent hydrogen,
20 hydroxy, alkoxy, hydroxyalkoxy, hydroxyalkyl or
alkoxyalkyl radicals; preferably, R13 and R14 each
independently represent hydrogen, hydroxy, alkoxy, 2hydroxyethoxy, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals,
wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms; more preferably, R13
25 and R14 each independently represent hydrogen, hydroxy,
methoxy or ethoxy radicals; or

R12 and R13 or R13 and R14 along with the carbon atoms to which they are attached represent 5-6 ring membered heteroaryl or benzo radical, each of which is optionally substituted with at least one hydroxy or alkoxy radical of 1-3 carbon atoms; preferably R12 and R13 or R13 and R14 along with the carbon atoms to which they are attached represent benzo radical, which is optionally substituted with at least one hydroxy or methoxy radical.

The absolute stereochemistry of the carbon atom of -CH(OH) - group is preferably (R). The absolute

stereochemistry of the carbon atom of $-CH(R^1)$ - group is preferably (S). The absolute stereochemistry of the carbon atom of $-CH(R^2)$ - groups is preferably (S).

5 A family of compounds of particular interest within Formula I are compounds embraced by the formula

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n, R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , and R^4 are as defined above.

A family of compounds of further interest within 15 Formula II are compounds embraced by the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
& & & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\$$

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and n are as defined above.

A more preferred family of compounds within Formula III consists of compounds or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n represents 1;

R1 represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-propynyl or -C(CH3)2S(O)2CH3 radicals;

25

```
R<sup>2</sup> represents a benzyl radical;
    R<sup>3</sup> represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl,
    cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl or
    cyclohexylmethyl radicals; and
    R4 is as defined above.
          Compounds of interest include the following:
10
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
    1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
15
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
    1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
20
    1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
25
    1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
30
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
35
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
```

```
2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
5
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl) propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
10
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-(2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
20
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
    amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
25
     2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
     amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
     2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
30
     [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
     amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
     2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
35
     [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
     amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
```

```
2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 5
     [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
10
    [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
15
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
20
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
25
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
30
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
35
    1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
```

- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide; and
- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-10 [[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide.

As utilized herein, the term "alkyl", alone or in combination, means a straight-chain or branched-chain alkyl radical containing preferably from 1 to 8 carbon 15 atoms, more preferably from 1 to 5 carbon atoms, most preferably 1 to 3 carbon atoms. Examples of such radicals include methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, iso-amyl, hexyl, 20 octyl and the like. The term "alkenyl", alone or in combination, means a straight-chain or branched-chain hydrocarbon radical having one or more double bonds and containing preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, more preferably from 2 to 8 carbon atoms, most preferably from 2 to 5 carbon atoms. Examples of suitable alkenyl 25 radicals include ethenyl, propenyl, 2-methylpropenyl, 1,4butadienyl and the like. The term "alkynyl", alone or in combination, means a straight-chain or branched chain hydrocarbon radical having one or more triple bonds and containing preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, more 30 preferably from 2 to 5 carbon atoms. Examples of alkynyl radicals include ethynyl, propynyl (propargyl), butynyl and the like. The term "alkoxy", alone or in combination, means an alkyl ether radical wherein the term alkyl is as defined above. Examples of suitable alkyl ether radicals include methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, isopropoxy, n-butoxy, iso-butoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy and the like. The term "cycloalkyl", alone or in combination, means a

saturated or partially saturated monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic alkyl radical wherein each cyclic moiety contains preferably from 3 to 8 carbon atom ring members, more preferably from 3 to 7 carbon atom ring members, most preferably from 5 to 6 carbon atom ring members, and which 5 may optionally be a benzo fused ring system which is optionally substituted as defined herein with respect to the definition of aryl. Examples of such cycloalkyl radicals include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, 10 cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, octahydronaphthyl, 2,3-dihydro-1H-indenyl, adamantyl and the like. "Bicyclic" and "tricyclic" as used herein are intended to include both fused ring systems, such as naphthyl and ß-carbolinyl, and substituted ring systems, such as biphenyl, phenylpyridyl, 15 naphthyl and diphenylpiperazinyl. The term "cycloalkylalkyl" means an alkyl radical as defined above which is substituted by a cycloalkyl radical as defined above. Examples of such cycloalkylalkyl radicals include cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, 20 cyclohexylmethyl, 1-cyclopentylethyl, 1-cyclohexylethyl, 2-cyclopentylethyl, 2-cyclohexylethyl, cyclobutylpropyl, cyclopentylpropyl, cyclohexylbutyl and the like. The term "benzo", alone or in combination, means the divalent radical C6H4= derived from benzene. The term "aryl", 25 alone or in combination, means a phenyl or naphthyl radical which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, hydroxy, amino, nitro, cyano, haloalkyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclo, alkanoylamino, amido, amidino, alkoxycarbonylamino, N-alkylamidino, 30 alkylamino, dialkylamino, N-alkylamido, N,N-dialkylamido, aralkoxycarbonylamino, alkylthio, alkylsulfinyl, alkylsulfonyl and the like. Examples of aryl radicals are phenyl, p-tolyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-(tert-butoxy)phenyl, 35 3-methyl-4-methoxyphenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3-nitrophenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 3-acetamidophenyl, 4acetamidophenyl, 2-methyl-3-acetamidophenyl, 4-CF₃-phenyl,

2-methyl-3-aminophenyl, 3-methyl-4-aminophenyl, 2-amino-3-

methylphenyl, 2,4-dimethyl-3-aminophenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3-methyl-4-hydroxyphenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 3-amino-1-naphthyl, 2-methyl-3-amino-1-naphthyl, 6-amino-2naphthyl, 4,6-dimethoxy-2-naphthyl, piperazinylphenyl and the like. The terms "aralkyl" and "aralkoxy", alone or in combination, means an alkyl or alkoxy radical as defined above in which at least one hydrogen atom is replaced by an aryl radical as defined above, such as benzyl, benzyloxy, 2-phenylethyl, dibenzylmethyl, 10 hydroxyphenylmethyl, methylphenylmethyl, diphenylmethyl, diphenylmethoxy, 4-methoxyphenylmethoxy and the like. term "aralkoxycarbonyl", alone or in combination, means a radical of the formula aralkyl-O-C(O) - in which the term "aralkyl" has the significance given above. Examples of an aralkoxycarbonyl radical are benzyloxycarbonyl and 4-15 methoxyphenylmethoxycarbonyl. The term "aryloxy" means a radical of the formula aryl-O- in which the term aryl has the significance given above. The term "alkanoyl", alone or in combination, means an acyl radical derived from an 20 alkanecarboxylic acid, examples of which include acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, valeryl, 4-methylvaleryl, and the The term "cycloalkylcarbonyl" means an acyl radical of the formula cycloalkyl-C(0) - in which the term "cycloalkyl" has the significance give above, such as 25 cyclopropylcarbonyl, cyclohexylcarbonyl, adamantylcarbonyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthoyl, 2acetamido-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthoyl, 1-hydroxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-6-naphthoyl and the like. The term "aralkanoyl" means an acyl radical derived from an arylsubstituted alkanecarboxylic acid such as phenylacetyl, 3-phenylpropionyl (hydrocinnamoyl), 4-phenylbutyryl, (2-naphthyl)acetyl, 4-chlorohydrocinnamoyl, 4-aminohydrocinnamoyl, 4-methoxyhydrocinnamoyl, and the like. The term "aroyl" means an acyl radical derived from an arylcarboxylic acid, "aryl" having the meaning given 35 above. Examples of such aroyl radicals include

substituted and unsubstituted benzoyl or napthoyl such as

benzoyl, 4-chlorobenzoyl, 4-carboxybenzoyl,

4-(benzyloxycarbonyl)benzoyl, 1-naphthoyl, 2-naphthoyl, 6-carboxy-2-naphthoy1, 6-(benzyloxycarbony1)-2-naphthoy1, 3-benzyloxy-2-naphthoyl, 3-hydroxy-2-naphthoyl, 3-(benzyloxyformamido)-2-naphthoyl, and the like. term "heterocyclo," alone or in combination, means a saturated or partially unsaturated monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic heterocycle radical containing at least one, preferably 1 to 4, more preferably 1 to 2, nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom ring members and having preferably 3 to 8 ring members in each ring, more preferably 3 to 7 ring members in each ring and most preferably 5 to 6 ring members in each ring. "Heterocyclo" is intended to include sulfones, sulfoxides, N-oxides of tertiary nitrogen ring members, and carbocyclic fused and benzo 15 fused ring systems. Such heterocyclo radicals may be optionally substituted on at least one, preferably 1 to 4, more preferably 1 to 2, carbon atoms by halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, oxo, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, amidino, N-alkylamidino, 20 alkoxycarbonylamino, alkylsulfonylamino and the like, and/or on a secondary nitrogen atom (i.e., -NH-) by hydroxy, alkyl, aralkoxycarbonyl, alkanoyl, heteroaralkyl, phenyl or phenylalkyl, and/or on a tertiary nitrogen atom (i.e., =N-) by oxido. "Heterocycloalkyl" means an alkyl 25 radical as defined above in which at least one hydrogen atom is replaced by a heterocyclo radical as defined above, such as pyrrolidinylmethyl, tetrahydrothienylmethyl, pyridylmethyl and the like. The term "heteroaryl", alone or in combination, means an aromatic heterocyclo radical as defined above, which is 30 optionally substituted as defined above with respect to the definitions of aryl and heterocyclo. Examples of such heterocyclo and heteroaryl groups are pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl (e.g., imidazol 4-yl, 35 1-benzyloxycarbonylimidazol-4-yl, etc.), pyrazolyl, pyridyl, (e.g., 2-(1-piperidinyl)pyridyl and 2-(4-benzyl

piperazin-l-yl-l-pyridinyl, etc.), pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl,

furyl, tetrahydrofuryl, thienyl, tetrahydrothienyl and its sulfoxide and sulfone derivatives, triazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, indolyl (e.g., 2-indolyl, etc.), quinolinyl, (e.g., 2-quinolinyl, 3-quinolinyl, 1-oxido-2-quinolinyl, etc.), isoquinolinyl (e.g., 1-isoquinolinyl, 3isoquinolinyl, etc.), tetrahydroquinolinyl (e.g., 1,2,3,4tetrahydro-2-quinolyl, etc.), 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolinyl (e.g., 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-oxo-isoquinolinyl, etc.), quinoxalinyl, ß-carbolinyl, 2benzofurancarbonyl, 1-,2-,4- or 5-benzimidazolyl, 10 methylenedioxyphen-4-yl, methylenedioxyphen-5-yl, ethylenedioxyphenyl, benzothiazolyl, benzopyranyl, benzofuryl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuryl, benzoxazolyl, thiophenyl and the like. The term "cycloalkylalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl group derived 15 from a cycloalkylalkoxycarboxylic acid of the formula cycloalkylalkyl-O-COOH wherein cycloalkylalkyl has the meaning given above. The term "aryloxyalkanoyl" means an acyl radical of the formula aryl-O-alkanoyl wherein aryl and alkanoyl have the meaning given above. The term 20 "heterocycloalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl group derived from heterocycloalkyl-O-COOH wherein heterocycloalkyl is as defined above. The term "heterocycloalkanoyl" is an acyl radical derived from a heterocycloalkylcarboxylic acid wherein heterocyclo has the meaning given above. The 25 term "heterocycloalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl radical derived from a heterocycloalkyl-O-COOH wherein heterocyclo has the meaning given above. The term "heteroaryloxycarbonyl" means an acyl radical derived from a carboxylic acid represented by heteroaryl-O-COOH wherein 30 heteroaryl has the meaning given above. The term "aminocarbonyl" alone or in combination, means an aminosubstituted carbonyl (carbamoyl) group wherein the amino group can be a primary, secondary or tertiary amino group containing substituents selected from alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl radicals and the

like. The term "aminoalkanoyl" means an acyl group derived from an amino-substituted alkylcarboxylic acid

wherein the amino group can be a primary, secondary or tertiary amino group containing substituents selected from alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl radicals and the like. The term "halogen" means fluorine,

- chlorine, bromine or iodine. The term "haloalkyl" means an alkyl radical having the meaning as defined above wherein one or more hydrogens are replaced with a halogen. Examples of such haloalkyl radicals include chloromethyl, 1-bromoethyl, fluoromethyl, difluoromethyl,
- trifluoromethyl, 1,1,1-trifluoroethyl and the like. The term "leaving group" (L or W) generally refers to groups readily displaceable by a nucleophile, such as an amine, a thiol or an alcohol nucleophile. Such leaving groups are well known in the art. Examples of such leaving groups include, but are not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxybenzotriazole, halides, triflates, tosylates and the like. Preferred leaving groups are indicated herein

where appropriate.

Procedures for preparing the compounds of Formula I 20 are set forth below. It should be noted that the general procedure is shown as it relates to preparation of compounds having the specified stereochemistry, for example, wherein the absolute stereochemistry about the hydroxyl group is designated as (R). However, such 25 procedures are generally applicable to those compounds of opposite configuration, e.g., where the stereochemistry about the hydroxyl group is (S). In addition, the compounds having the (R) stereochemistry can be utilized to produce those having the (S) stereochemistry. For 30 example, a compound having the (R) stereochemistry can be inverted to the (S) stereochemistry using well-known methods.

Preparation of Compounds of Formula I

35 The compounds of the present invention represented by Formula I above can be prepared utilizing the following general procedures as schematically shown in Schemes I and II.

SCHEME I

a) deprotection; X = Cl or Br.

SCHEME II

$$P^{1} - N \longrightarrow Q$$

$$P^{1} - N \longrightarrow Q$$

$$P^{1} - N \longrightarrow Q$$

$$P^{2} \longrightarrow Q$$

$$P^{2$$

a) deprotection; X = Cl or Br; L = leaving group.

5

An N-protected chloroketone derivative of an amino acid having the formula:

wherein P represents an amino protecting group, and R² is as defined above, is reduced to the corresponding alcohol utilizing an appropriate reducing agent. Suitable amino protecting groups are well known in the art and include carbobenzoxy, t-butoxycarbonyl, and the like. A preferred amino protecting group is carbobenzoxy. A preferred N-protected chloroketone is

N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone. A preferred reducing agent is sodium borohydride. The reduction reaction is conducted at a temperature of from -10°C to about 25°C, preferably at about 0°C, in a suitable solvent system such as, for example,

tetrahydrofuran, and the like. The N-protected chloroketones are commercially available, e.g., such as from Bachem, Inc., Torrance, California. Alternatively, the chloroketones can be prepared by the procedure set forth in S. J. Fittkau, <u>J. Prakt. Chem.</u>, 315, 1037

20 (1973), and subsequently N-protected utilizing procedures which are well known in the art.

The halo alcohol can be utilized directly, as described below, or, preferably, is reacted, preferably at room temperature, with a suitable base in a suitable solvent system to produce an N-protected amino epoxide of the formula:

wherein P and R² are as defined above. Suitable solvent systems for preparing the amino epoxide include ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and the like including mixtures thereof. Suitable bases for producing the epoxide from the reduced chloroketone include potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium t-butoxide, DBU and the like. A preferred base is potassium hydroxide.

10 Alternatively, a protected amino epoxide can be prepared, such as in co-owned and co-pending PCT Patent Application Serial No. PCT/US93/04804 (WO 93/23388) and PCT/US94/12201, and US Patent Application Attorney Docket No. C-2860, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in their entirety) disclose methods of preparing chiral epoxide, chiral cyanohydrin, chiral amine and other chiral intermediates useful in the preparation of retroviral protease inhibitors, starting with a DL-, D- or L-amino acid which is reacted with a 20 suitable amino-protecting group in a suitable solvent to produce an amino-protected amino acid ester. For the purposes of illustration, a protected L-amino acid with the following formula will be used to prepare the inhibitors of this invention:

25

$$P^1$$
 N
 OP^3

wherein P³ represents carboxyl-protecting group, e.g., methyl, ethyl, benzyl, tertiary-butyl, 4
methoxyphenylmethyl and the like; R² is as defined above; and P¹ and P² and/or P' independently are selected from amine protecting groups, including but not limited to, aralkyl, substituted aralkyl, cycloalkenylalkyl and substituted cycloalkenylalkyl, allyl, substituted allyl,

acyl, alkoxycarbonyl, aralkoxycarbonyl and silyl. Examples of aralkyl include, but are not limited to benzyl, ortho-methylbenzyl, trityl and benzhydryl, which can be optionally substituted with halogen, alkyl of C1-C8, alkoxy, hydroxy, nitro, alkylene, amino, alkylamino, acylamino and acyl, or their salts, such as phosphonium and ammonium salts. Examples of aryl groups include phenyl, naphthalenyl, indanyl, anthracenyl, durenyl, 9-(9-phenylfluorenyl) and phenanthrenyl, cycloalkenylalkyl or substituted cycloalkylenylalkyl 10 radicals containing cycloalkyls of C6-C10. Suitable acyl groups include carbobenzoxy, t-butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, substituted benzoyl, butyryl, acetyl, tri-fluoroacetyl, tri-chloroacetyl, phthaloyl and the like. Preferably P^1 and P^2 are independently 15 selected from aralkyl and substituted aralkyl. More preferably, each of P^1 and P^2 is benzyl.

Additionally, the P¹ and/or P² and/or P' protecting groups can form a heterocyclic ring with the nitrogen to which they are attached, for example, 1,2-bis(methylene)benzene, phthalimidyl, succinimidyl, maleimidyl and the like and where these heterocyclic groups can further include adjoining aryl and cycloalkyl rings. In addition, the heterocyclic groups can be mono-, di- or tri-substituted, e.g., nitrophthalimidyl. The term silyl refers to a silicon atom optionally substituted by one or more alkyl, aryl and aralkyl groups.

30

35

Suitable silyl protecting groups include, but are not limited to, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, tri-isopropylsilyl, tert-butyldimethylsilyl, dimethylphenylsilyl, 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)benzene, 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)ethane and diphenylmethylsilyl. Silylation of the amine functions to provide mono- or bis-disilylamine can provide derivatives of the

aminoalcohol, amino acid, amino acid esters and amino acid amide. In the case of amino acids, amino acid esters and amino acid amides, reduction of the carbonyl function provides the required mono- or bis-silyl aminoalcohol. Silylation of the aminoalcohol can lead to the N,N,O-tri-silyl derivative. Removal of the silyl function from the silyl ether function is readily accomplished by treatment with, for example, a metal hydroxide or ammonium flouride reagent, either as a discrete reaction step or in situ during the preparation 10 of the amino aldehyde reagent. Suitable silylating agents are, for example, trimethylsilyl chloride, tertbuty-dimethylsilyl chloride, phenyldimethylsilyl chlorie, diphenylmethylsilyl chloride or their combination 15 products with imidazole or DMF. Methods for silylation of amines and removal of silyl protecting groups are well known to those skilled in the art. Methods of preparation of these amine derivatives from corresponding amino acids, amino acid amides or amino acid esters are also well known to those skilled in the art of organic 20 chemistry including amino acid/amino acid ester or aminoalcohol chemistry.

The amino-protected L-amino acid ester is then

reduced, to the corresponding alcohol. For example, the amino-protected L-amino acid ester can be reduced with dissobutylaluminum hydride at -78°C in a suitable solvent such as toluene. Preferred reducing agents include lithium aluminium hydride, lithium borohydride, sodium borohydride, borane, lithium tri-ter-butoxyaluminum hydride, borane/THF complex. Most preferably, the reducing agent is dissobutylaluminum hydride (DiBAL-H) in toluene. The resulting alcohol is then converted, for example, by way of a Swern oxidation, to the corresponding aldehyde of the formula:

$$P^1$$
 N
 H
 P^2
 N

wherein P^1 , P^2 and R^2 are as defined above. Thus, a dichloromethane solution of the alcohol is added to a cooled (-75 to -68° C) solution of oxalyl chloride in dichloromethane and DMSO in dichloromethane and stirred for 35 minutes.

Acceptable oxidizing reagents include, for example, sulfur trioxide-pyridine complex and DMSO, oxalyl 10 chloride and DMSO, acetyl chloride or anhydride and DMSO, trifluoroacetyl chloride or anhydride and DMSO, methanesulfonyl chloride and DMSO or tetrahydro thiaphene-S-oxide, toluenesulfonyl bromide and DMSO, trifluoromethanesulfonyl anhydride (triflic anhydride) 15 and DMSO, phosphorus pentachloride and DMSO, dimethylphosphoryl chloride and DMSO and isobutyl chloroformate and DMSO. The oxidation conditions reported by Reetz et al [Angew Chem., 99, p. 1186, 20 (1987)], Angew Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., 26, p. 1141, 1987) employed oxalyl chloride and DMSO at -78°C.

The preferred oxidation method described in this invention is sulfur trioxide pyridine complex, triethylamine and DMSO at room temperature. This system provides excellent yields of the desired chiral protected amino aldehyde usable without the need for purification i.e., the need to purify kilograms of intermediates by chromatography is eliminated and large scale operations are made less hazardous. Reaction at room temperature also eliminated the need for the use of low temperature reactor which makes the process more suitable for commercial production.

The reaction may be carried out under an inert atmosphere such as nitrogen or argon, or normal or dry air, under atmospheric pressure or in a sealed reaction vessel under positive pressure. Preferred is a nitrogen atmosphere. Alternative amine bases include, for example, tri-butyl amine, tri-isopropyl amine, Nmethylpiperidine, N-methyl morpholine, azabicyclononane, diisopropylethylamine, 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylaminopyridine, or mixtures of these bases. Triethylamine is a preferred base. Alternatives to pure 10 DMSO as solvent include mixtures of DMSO with non-protic or halogenated solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, ethyl acetate, toluene, xylene, dichloromethane, ethylene dichloride and the like. Dipolar aprotic co-solvents 15 include acetonitrile, dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, acetamide, tetramethyl urea and its cyclic analog, N-methylpyrrolidone, sulfolane and the like. Rather than N, N-dibenzylphenylalaninol as the aldehyde precursor, the phenylalaninol derivatives 20 discussed above can be used to provide the corresponding N-monosubstituted [either P^1 or $P^2 = H$] or N, Ndisubstituted aldehyde.

In addition, hydride reduction of an amide or ester
derivative of the corresponding benzyl (or other suitable
protecting group) nitrogen protected phenylalanine,
substituted phenylalanine or cycloalkyl analog of
phenylalanine derivative can be carried out to provide
the aldehydes. Hydride transfer is an additional method
of aldehyde synthesis under conditions where aldehyde
condensations are avoided, cf, Oppenauer Oxidation.

The aldehydes of this process can also be prepared by methods of reducing protected phenylalanine and phenylalanine analogs or their amide or ester derivatives by, e.g., sodium amalgam with HCl in ethanol or lithium or sodium or potassium or calcium in ammonia. The reaction temperature may be from about -20°C to about

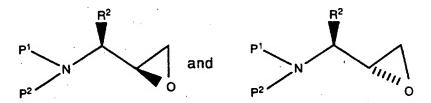
45°C, and preferably from abut 5°C to about 25°C. Two additional methods of obtaining the nitrogen protected aldehyde include oxidation of the corresponding alcohol with bleach in the presence of a catalytic amount of 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-1-pyridyloxy free radical. In a second method, oxidation of the alcohol to the aldehyde is accomplished by a catalytic amount of tetrapropylammonium perruthenate in the presence of N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide.

10

15

Alternatively, an acid chloride derivative of a protected phenylalanine or phenylalanine derivative as disclosed above can be reduced with hydrogen and a catalyst such as Pd on barium carbonate or barium sulphate, with or without an additional catalyst moderating agent such as sulfur or a thiol (Rosenmund Reduction).

then reacted with a halomethyllithium reagent, which reagent is generated in <u>situ</u> by reacting an alkyllithium or arylithium compound with a dihalomethane represented by the formula X¹CH₂X² wherein X¹ and X² independently represent I, Br or Cl. For example, a solution of the aldehyde and chloroiodomethane in THF is cooled to -78° C and a solution of n-butyllithium in hexane is added. The resulting product is a mixture of diastereomers of the corresponding amino-protected epoxides of the formulas:



30

The diastereomers can be separated e.g., by chromatography, or, alternatively, once reacted in subsequent steps the diastereomeric products can be

separated. A D-amino acid can be utilized in place of the L-amino acid in order to prepare compounds having an (S) stereochemistry at the carbon bonded to \mathbb{R}^2 .

- 5 The addition of chloromethylithium or bromomethylithium to a chiral amino aldehyde is highly diastereoselective. Preferably, the chloromethyllithium or bromomethylithium is generated in-situ from the reaction of the dihalomethane and n-butyllithium. 10 Acceptable methyleneating halomethanes include chloroiodomethane, bromochloromethane, dibromomethane, diiodomethane, bromofluoromethane and the like. The sulfonate ester of the addition product of, for example, hydrogen bromide to formaldehyde is also a methyleneating 15 Tetrahydrofuran is the preferred solvent, however alternative solvents such as toluene, dimethoxyethane, ethylene dichloride, methylene chloride can be used as pure solvents or as a mixture. Dipolar aprotic solvents such as acetonitrile, DMF, N-methylpyrrolidone are useful 20 as solvents or as part of a solvent mixture. reaction can be carried out under an inert atmosphere such as nitrogen or argon. For n-butyl lithium can be substituted other organometalic reagents reagents such as methyllithium, tert-butyl lithium, sec-butyl lithium, 25 phenyllithium, phenyl sodium and the like. The reaction can be carried out at temperatures of between about -80°C
- additions are preferred in certain conditions. The preferred pressure of the reaction is atmospheric however a positive pressure is valuable under certain conditions such as a high humidity environment.

-15°C. Reagents can be added singly but multiple

to 0°C but preferably between about -80°C to -20°C. The most preferred reaction temperatures are between -40°C to

Alternative methods of conversion to the epoxides of this invention include substitution of other charged methylenation precurser species followed by their treatment with base to form the analogous anion.

Examples of these species include trimethylsulfoxonium tosylate or triflate, tetramethylammonium halide, methyldiphenylsulfoxonium halide wherein halide is chloride, bromide or iodide.

5

The conversion of the aldehydes of this invention into their epoxide derivative can also be carried out in multiple steps. For example, the addition of the anion of thioanisole prepared from, for example, a butyl or aryl lithium reagent, to the protected aminoaldehyde, 10 oxidation of the resulting protected aminosulfide alcohol with well known oxidizing agents such as hydrogen peroxide, tert-butyl hypochlorite, bleach or sodium periodate to give a sulfoxide. Alkylation of the sulfoxide with, for example, methyl iodide or bromide, 15 methyl tosylate, methyl mesylate, methyl triflate, ethyl bromide, isopropyl bromide, benzyl chloride or the like, in the presence of an organic or inorganic base Alternatively, the protected aminosulfide alcohol can be alkylated with, for example, the alkylating agents above, 20 to provide a sulfonium salts that are subsequently converted into the subject epoxides with tert-amine or mineral bases.

25 The desired epoxides formed, using most preferred conditions, diastereoselectively in ratio amounts of at least about an 85:15 ratio (S:R). The product can be purified by chromatography to give the diastereomerically and enantiomerically pure product but it is more conveniently used directly without purification to 30 prepare retroviral protease inhibitors. The foregoing process is applicable to mixtures of optical isomers as well as resolved compounds. If a particular optical isomer is desired, it can be selected by the choice of starting material, e.g., L-phenylalanine, D-35 phenylalanine, L-phenylalaninol, D-phenylalaninol, D-hexahydrophenylalaninol and the like, or resolution can occur at intermediate or final steps. Chiral auxiliaries

such as one or two equivalents of camphor sulfonic acid, citric acid, camphoric acid, 2-methoxyphenylacetic acid and the like can be used to form salts, esters or amides of the compounds of this invention. These compounds or derivatives can be crystallized or separated chromatographically using either a chiral or achiral column as is well known to those skilled in the art.

The amino epoxide is then reacted, in a suitable solvent system, with an equal amount, or preferably an 10 excess of, a desired amine of the formula R3NH2, wherein R³ is hydrogen or is as defined above. The reaction can be conducted over a wide range of temperatures, e.g., from about 10°C to about 100°C, but is preferably, but not necessarily, conducted at a temperature at which the 15 solvent begins to reflux. Suitable solvent systems include protic, non-protic and dipolar aprotic organic solvents such as, for example, those wherein the solvent is an alcohol, such as methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, and the like, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane and 20 the like, and toluene, N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethyl sulfoxide, and mixtures thereof. A preferred solvent is isopropanol. The resulting product is a 3-(N-protected $amino)-3-(R^2)-1-(NHR^3)-propan-2-ol derivative$ 25 (hereinafter referred to as an amino alcohol) can be represented by the formulas:

30 wherein P, P^1 , P^2 , R^2 and R^3 are as described above. Alternatively, a haloalcohol can be utilized in place of the amino epoxide.

15

20

The amino alcohol defined above is then reacted in a suitable solvent with the sulfonyl chloride R⁴SO₂Cl, the sulfonyl bromide R⁴SO₂Br or the corresponding sulfonyl anhydride, preferably in the presence of an acid scavenger. Suitable solvents in which the reaction can be conducted include methylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran and the like. Suitable acid scavengers include triethylamine, pyridine and the like. The resulting sulfonamide derivative can be represented, depending on the epoxide utilized by the formulas

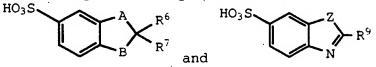
wherein P, P^1 , P^2 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 are as defined above. These intermediates are useful for preparing inhibitor compounds of the present invention.

The sulfonyl halides of the formula R4SO2X can be prepared by the reaction of a suitable aryl, heteroaryl and benzo fused heterocyclo Grignard or lithium reagents with sulfuryl chloride, or sulfur dioxide followed by oxidation with a halogen, preferably chlorine. Aryl, heteroaryl and benzo fused heterocyclo Grignard or lithium reagents can be prepared from their corresponding halide (such as chloro or bromo) compounds which are commercially available or readily prepared from commercially available starting materials using known methods in the art. Also, thiols may be oxidized to sulfonyl chlorides using chlorine in the presence of water under carefully controlled conditions. Additionally, sulfonic acids, such as arylsulfonic acids, may be converted to sulfonyl halides using reagents such as PCl₅, SOCl₂, ClC(O)C(O)Cl and the like, and also to anhydrides using suitable dehydrating reagents. The

35

sulfonic acids may in turn be prepared using procedures well known in the art. Some sulfonic acids are commercially available. In place of the sulfonyl halides, sulfinyl halides (R4SOX) or sulfenyl halides (R4SX) can be utilized to prepare compounds wherein the -SO₂- moiety is replaced by an -SO- or -S- moiety, respectively. Arylsulfonic acids, benzo fused heterocyclo sulfonic acids or heteroaryl sulfonic acids can be prepared by sulfonation of the aromatic ring by 10 well known methods in the art, such as by reaction with sulfuric acid, SO3, SO3 complexes, such as DMF(SO3), pyridine(SO₃), N,N-dimethylacetamide(SO₃), and the like. Preferably, arylsulfonyl halides are prepared from aromatic compounds by reaction with DMF(SO3) and SOCl2 or 15 ClC(0)C(0)Cl. The reactions may be performed stepwise or in a single pot.

Arylsulfonic acids, benzo fused heterocyclo sulfonic acids, heteroaryl sulfonic acids, arylmercaptans, benzo fused heterocyclo mercaptans, heteroarylmercaptans, arylhalides, benzo fused heterocyclo halides, heteroarylhalides, and the like are commercially available or can be readily prepared from starting materials commercially available using standard methods well known in the art. For example, a number of sulfonic acids (R4SO3H) represented by the formulas



wherein A, B, Z, R⁶, R⁷ and R⁹ are as defined above, have been prepared from 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptanphenol, 1,2-benzenediol, 2-aminobenzothiazole, benzothiazole, 2-aminobenzimidazole, benzimidazole, and the like, which are commercially available, by Carter, US Patent 4,595,407; Ehrenfreund et al., US Patent 4,634,465; Yoder et al., J. Heterocycl. Chem. 4:166-167 (1967); Cole et al., Aust. J. Chem. 33:675-680 (1980); Cabiddu et al.,

15.

20

25

30

Synthesis 797-798 (1976); Ncube et al., Tet. Letters 2345-2348 (1978); Ncube et al., Tet. Letters 255-256 (1977); Ansink & Cerfontain, Rec. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas 108:395-403 (1989); and Kajihara & Tsuchiya, EP 638564 Al, each of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. For example, 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptanphenol or 1,2-benzenediol can be reacted with $R^6R^7C(L^i)_2$, where L' is as defined below, preferably, Br or I, in the presence of a base, such as hydroxide, or $R^6R^7C=0$ in the presence of acid, such as toluenesulfonic acid, or P_2O_5 ., to prepare the substituted benzo fused heterocycle of formula

which can then be sulfonylated to the sulfonic acid above. For example, CF₂Br₂ or CD₂Br₂ can be reacted with 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptanphenol or 1,2-benzenediol in the presence of base to produce the compounds

respectively, wherein A and B are O or S and D is a deuterium atom. Also, when A and/or B represent S, the sulfur can be oxidized using the methods described below to the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives.

Following preparation of the sulfonamide derivative, the amino protecting group P or P¹ and P² amino protecting groups are removed under conditions which will not affect the remaining portion of the molecule. These methods are well known in the art and include acid hydrolysis, hydrogenolysis and the like. A preferred method involves removal of the protecting group, e.g., removal of a carbobenzoxy group, by hydrogenolysis utilizing palladium on carbon in a suitable solvent system such as an alcohol, acetic acid, and the like or mixtures thereof. Where the protecting group is a t-

10

15

20

butoxycarbonyl group, it can be removed utilizing an inorganic or organic acid, e.g., HCl or trifluoroacetic acid, in a suitable solvent system, e.g., dioxane or methylene chloride. The resulting product is the amine salt derivative.

Following neutralization of the salt, the amine is then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula PNHCH(R¹)COOH, wherein P and R¹ are as defined above, followed by deprotection of the amine as described above, and coupling to

wherein R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are as defined above, W is a leaving group, such as mesylate, bromo or chloro, and L is leaving group such as halide, anhydride, active ester, and the like. For example when R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are both hydrogen radical, bromoacetyl halide, chloroacetyl halide or the corresponding anhydride can be used. Finally, reacting the above intermediate with the cyclic-amine of formula

can produce the antiviral compounds of the present invention having the formula

wherein n, R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{13} and R^{14} are as defined above. Amines of formula

are commercially available, such as pyrrolidine, 2pyrrolidinemethanol, 3-pyrrolidinol, 2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidine, kainic acid, piperidine, 3hydroxypiperidine, 4-hydroxypiperidine, 2piperidinemethanol, 2,3-dihydroindole, isoindoline, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline, 1,2,3,4tetrahydroguinoline, and the like; or can readily be prepared from commercially available starting materials using standard methods well known in the art, such as 4-10 hydroxyproline, 3-hydroxypiperidine, 4-hydroxypiperidine, 3-pyrroline, isonipecotic acid, 5-hydroxyindole, 5hydroxyindole-3-acetic acid, 5,6-dimethoxyindole, isoquinoline, quinoline, 5-hydroxyisoquinoline, 8hydroxy-5-nitroquinoline, 6,7-dimethoxy-1,2,3,4-15 tetrahydroisoguinoline, and the like.

Alternatively, following neutralization of the salt, the amine is then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula PNHCH(R1)COOH, wherein P and R1 are as defined above, followed by deprotection of the amine as described above and coupling the deprotected amine to the cyclic-amino acid of formula

wherein n, R10, R11, R12, R13 and R14 are as defined above, such as pyrrolidin-1-ylacetic acid, piperidin-1-ylacetic acid and the like, to produce the antiviral compounds of the present invention. The cyclic-amino acids are commercially available or are readily prepared

from a protected carboxylic acid with a leaving group W (defined above) by reaction with the cyclic-amine as shown in Scheme III or alternatively, by reacting the cyclic-amine with the appropriate substituted ketone in the presence of cyanide anion followed by hydroylsis of the cyano group to the corresponding carboxylic acid as shown in Scheme IV, wherein n, P3, R10, R11, R12, R13 and R14 are as defined above.

10

Scheme III

Scheme IV

15

20

$$R^{13}$$
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{14}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{14}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{14}
 R^{14}
 R^{15}
 R^{15}
 R^{10}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{11}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{12}
 R^{13}
 R^{14}
 R^{14}
 R^{15}
 R

Alternatively, following neutralization of the salt, the amine is then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
R^{13} & R^{12} \\
R^{10} & R^{11} \\
R^{14} & 0
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{12} & H \\
R^{11} & R^{11}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\underline{\underline{z}} \\
R^{1}
\end{array}$$
OH

wherein n, R¹, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³ and R¹⁴ are as defined above, which can be prepared in a similar fashion to the coupling methods described above from DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula $NH_2CH(R^1)COOP^3$, wherein P^3 and R^1 are as defined above.

The DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula PNHCH(R^1)COOH or NH₂CH(R^1)COOP³, wherein P, P³ 10 and R¹ are as defined above, are commercially available (Sigma Chemical Co.), or readily prepared using standard methods well known in the art from readily available starting materials. Preferably, P is a benzyloxycarbonyl or t-butoxycarbonyl radical and P3 is benzyl or tert-15 butyl radicals. Standard coupling procedures can be used to couple the amino acids and amines. The carboxylic acid group is reacted to form an anhydride, mixed anhydride, acid halide, such as chloride or bromide, or 20 active ester, such as esters of N-hydroxysuccinimide, HOBT and the like, using well known procedures and conditions. Appropriate solvent systems include tetrahydrofuran, ethylether, methyl-tert-butylether, methylene chloride, N, N-dimethylformamide and the like, 25 including mixtures thereof.

Alternatively, the protected amino alcohol from the epoxide opening can be further protected at the newly introduced amino group with a protecting group P' which is not removed with the removal of the amino protecting groups P or P^1 and P^2 , for example, P' is selectively removable. One skilled in the art can choose appropriate combinations of P', P, P^1 and P^2 . For example, suitable combinations are P = Cbz and P' = Boc; P' = Cbz and P' = Cbz

Boc; $P^1 = Cbz$, $P^2 = benzyl$ and P' = Boc; and $P^1 = P^2 =$ benzyl and P' = Boc. The resulting compound represented by the formula

can be carried through the remainder of the synthesis to provide a compound of the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
R^{13} & R^{12} \\
R^{10} & R^{11} \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{L}}}}} & N \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{L}}}} & N \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{L}}} & N \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{L}} & N \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{L}}} & N \\
N & \underline{\underline{\underline{L}$$

1.0

15

25

5

wherein n, P', R1, R2, R3, R10, R11, R12, R13, R14 are as defined above. The remainder of the synthesis above can be carried out as desired either by the addition of desired residues or groups one at a time or in a preformed molecule made up of more that one residue or group in one step. The former approach is the sequential synthesis method and the altter is the convergent synthesis method. Synthetic transformations are possible at this stage also. The protecting group P' is then 20 selectively removed and the resulting amine is reacted with the sulfonyl chloride R4SO2Cl, the sulfonyl bromide ${\rm R}^4{\rm SO}_2{\rm Br}$ or the corresponding sulfonyl anhydride, preferably in the presence of an acid scavenger, to form the compounds of the present invention

wherein n, R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{13} , R^{14} are as defined above. This selective deprotection and conversion to the sulfonamide can be accomplished at either the end of the synthesis or at any appropriate intermediate step if desired.

The chemical reactions described above are generally disclosed in terms of their broadest application to the preparation of the compounds of this 10 invention. Occasionally, the reactions may not be applicable as described to each compound included within the disclosed scope. The compounds for which this occurs will be readily recognized by those skilled in the art. In all such cases, either the reactions can be 15 successfully performed by conventional modifications known to those skilled in the art, e.g., by appropriate protection of interfering groups, by changing to alternative conventional reagents, by routine modification of reaction conditions, and the like, or 20 other reactions disclosed herein or otherwise conventional, will be applicable to the preparation of the corresponding compounds of this invention. In all preparative methods, all starting materials are known or readily prepared from known starting materials.

25

30

Without further elaboration, it is believed that one skilled in the art can, using the preceding description, utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The following preferred specific embodiments are, therefore, to be construed as merely illustrative, and not limitative of the remainder of the disclosure in any way whatsoever.

All reagents were used as received without purification. All proton and carbon NMR spectra were obtained on either a Varian VXR-300 or VXR-400 nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometer.

The following Examples illustrate the preparation of inhibitor compounds of the present invention and intermediates useful in preparing the inhibitor compounds of the present invention.

EXAMPLE 1

10 Preparation of 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)aminolbenzenepropanol

METHOD 1: 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol from the DIBAL Reduction of N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)-L-Phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester

15

Step 1:

A solution of L-phenylalanine (50.0 g, 0.302 mol), sodium hydroxide (24.2 g, 0.605 mol) and potassium carbonate (83.6 g, 0.605 mol) in water (500 mL) was 20 heated to 97°C. Benzyl bromide (108.5 mL, 0.605 mol) was then slowly added (addition time - 25 min). The mixture was stirred at 97°C for 30 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere. The solution was cooled to room temperature and extracted with toluene (2 \times 250 mL). The combined 25 organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to an The identity of the product was confirmed as follows. Analytical TLC (10% ethyl acetate/hexane, silica gel) showed major component at Rf value = 0.32 to 30 be the desired tribenzylated compound, N,Nbis(phenylmethyl)-L-phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester. This compound can be purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 15% ethyl acetate/hexane). Usually the

product is pure enough to be used directly in the next step without further purification. ^{1}H NMR spectrum was in agreement with published literature. ^{1}H NMR (CDCL3) ∂ , 3.00 and 3.14 (ABX-system, 2H, JAB=14.1 Hz, JAX=7.3 Hz and JBX= 5.9 Hz), 3.54 and 3.92 (AB-System , 4 H, JAB=13.9 Hz), 3.71 (t, 1H, J=7.6 Hz), 5.11 and 5.23 (AB-System, 2H, JAB=12.3 Hz), and 7.18 (m, 20 H). EIMS: m/z 434 (M-1).

10 Step 2:

The benzylated phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester (0.302 mol) from the previous reaction was dissolved in toluene (750 mL) and cooled to -55°C. A 1.5 M solution of DIBAL in toluene (443.9 mL, 0.666 mol) was added at a rate to maintain the temperature between -55 to -50°C 15 (addition time - 1 hr). The mixture was stirred for 20 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere and then quenched at -55°C by the slow addition of methanol (37 ml). The cold solution was then poured into cold (5°C) 1.5 N HCl solution (1.8 L). The precipitated solid (approx. 138 g) 20 was filtered off and washed with toluene. The solid material was suspended in a mixture of toluene (400 mL) and water (100 ml). The mixture was cooled to 5°C and treated with 2.5 N NaOH (186 mL) and then stirred at room temperature until solid dissolved. The toluene layer was 25 separated from the aqueous phase and washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to a volume of 75 mL (89 g). Ethyl acetate (25 mL) and hexane (25 mL) were added to the residue upon which the desired alcohol product began to crystallize. 30 After 30 min, an additional 50 mL hexane were added to promote further crystallization. The solid was filtered off and washed with 50 mL hexane to give 34.9 g of first crop product. A second crop of product (5.6 g) was isolated by refiltering the mother liquor. The two crops 35 were combined and recrystallized from ethyl acetate (20 mL) and hexane (30 mL) to give 40 g of BS-2-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino)benzenepropanol, 40% yield from

L-phenylalanine. An additional 7 g (7%) of product can be obtained from recrystallization of the concentrated mother liquor. TLC of product Rf = 0.23 (10% ethyl acetate/hexane, silica gel); 1H NMR (CDCl3) 0 2.44 (m, 1H,), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.33 (m, 1H), 3.48 and 3.92 (AB-System, 4H, J_{AB} = 13.3 Hz), 3.52 (m, 1H) and 7.23 (m, 15H); $[\alpha]_{D25}$ +42.4 (c 1.45, CH₂Cl₂); DSC 77.67°C; Anal. Calcd. for C23H25ON: C, 83.34; H, 7.60; N, 4.23. Found: C, 83.43; H, 7.59; N, 4.22. HPLC on chiral stationary 10 phase: Cyclobond I SP column (250 x 4.6 mm I.D.), mobile phase: methanol/triethyl ammonium acetate buffer pH 4.2 (58:42, v/v), flow-rate of 0.5 ml/min, detection with detector at 230nm and a temperature of 0°C. Retention time: 11.25 min., retention time of the desired product 15. enantiomer: 12.5 min.

METHOD 2: Preparation of &S-2-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino] benzene-propanol from the N,N-Dibenzylation of L-Phenylalaninol

20

L-phenylalaninol (176.6 g, 1.168 mol) was added to a stirred solution of potassium carbonate (484.6 g, 3.506 mol) in 710 mL of water. The mixture was heated to 65°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of benzyl bromide (400 g, 2.339 mol) in 3A ethanol (305 mL) was added 25 at a rate that maintained the temperature between 60-68°C. The biphasic solution was stirred at 65°C for 55 min and then allowed to cool to 10°C with vigorous stirring. The oily product solidified into small granules. The product 30 was diluted with 2.0 L of tap water and stirred for 5 minutes to dissolve the inorganic by products. The product was isolated by filtration under reduced pressure and washed with water until the pH is 7. The crude product obtained was air dried overnight to give a semi-dry solid (407 g) which was recrystallized from 1.1 L of ethyl acetate/heptane (1:10 by volume). The product was isolated by filtration (at -8° C), washed with 1.6 L of cold (-10°C ethyl acetate/heptane (1:10 by volume) and air-dried to

give 339 g (88% yield) of £S-2[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol, Mp = 71.5-73.0°C.
More product can be obtained from the mother liquor if
necessary. The other analytical characterization was
identical to compound prepared as described in Method 1.

EXAMPLE 2

$$\bigcup_{H} \circ$$

10 <u>Preparation of 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]</u> benzenepropanaldehyde

METHOD 1:

2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol 15 (200 g, 0.604 mol) was dissolved in triethylamine (300 mL, 2.15 mol). The mixture was cooled to 12°C and a solution of sulfur trioxide/pyridine complex (380 g, 2.39 mol) in DMSO (1.6 L) was added at a rate to maintain the temperature between 8-17°C (addition time - 1.0 h). 20 solution was stirred at ambient temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere for 1.5 hour at which time the reaction was complete by TLC analysis (33% ethyl acetate/hexane, silica gel). The reaction mixture was cooled with ice water and quenched with 1.6 L of cold 25 water (10-15°C) over 45 minutes. The resultant solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (2.0 L), washed with 5% citric acid (2.0 L), and brine (2.2 L), dried over MgSO4 (280 g) and filtered. The solvent was removed on a rotary evaporator at 35-40°C and then dried under vacuum 30 to give 198.8 g of 2S-[Bis-(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde as a pale yellow oil (99.9%). crude product obtained was pure enough to be used directly in the next step without purification. The

analytical data of the compound were consistent with the published literature. [\alpha]_D25 = -92.9 ° (c 1.87, CH_2Cl_2);

1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) \(\partial_2\), 2.94 and 3.15 (ABX-System,

2H, JAB= 13.9 Hz, JAX= 7.3 Hz and JBX = 6.2 Hz), 3.56

5 (t, 1H, 7.1 Hz), 3.69 and 3.82 (AB-System, 4H, JAB= 13.7 Hz), 7.25 (m, 15 H) and 9.72 (s, 1H); HRMS Calcd for (M+1) C23H24NO 330.450, found: 330.1836. Anal. Calcd. for C23H23ON: C, 83.86; H, 7.04; N, 4.25. Found: C, 83.64; H, 7.42; N, 4.19. HPLC on chiral stationary phase: (S,S)

10 Pirkle-Whelk-O 1 column (250 x 4.6 mm I.D.), mobile phase: hexane/isopropanol (99.5:0.5, v/v), flow-rate: 1.5 ml/min, detection with UV detector at 210nm. Retention time of the desired S-isomer: 8.75 min., retention time of the R-enantiomer 10.62 min.

15

METHOD 2:

A solution of oxalyl chloride (8.4 ml, 0.096 mol) in dichloromethane (240 ml) was cooled to -74°C. A solution of DMSO (12.0 ml, 0.155 mol) in dichloromethane 20 (50 ml) was then slowly added at a rate to maintain the temperature at -74°C (addition time ~ 1.25 hr). mixture was stirred for 5 min. followed by addition of a solution of &S-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol (0.074 mol) in 100 ml of dichloromethane (addition time 25 -20 min., temp. -75°C to -68°C). The solution was stirred at -78°C for 35 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere. Triethylamine (41.2 ml, 0.295 mol) was then added over 10 min. (temp. -78° to -68°C) upon which the ammonium salt precipitated. The cold mixture was stirred for 30 min. and then water (225 ml) was added. 30 dichloromethane layer was separated from the aqueous phase and washed with water, brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and hexane and then filtered to further remove the ammonium salt. The filtrate was concentrated to give αS -[bis(phenylmethyl)amino] benzenepropanaldehyde. The aldehyde was carried on to the next step without purification.

METHOD 3:

To a mixture of 1.0 g(3.0 mmoles) of ßS-2[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol 0.531 g(4.53)

5 mmoles) of N-methyl morpholine, 2.27 g of molecular sieves(4A) and 9.1 mL of acetonitrile was added 53 mg (0.15 mmoles) of tetrapropylammonium perruthenate(TPAP). The mixture was stirred for 40 minutes at room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in 15 mL of ethyl acetate, filtered through a pad of silica gel. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give a product containing approximately 50% of as-2[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene propanaldehyde as a pale yellow oil.

METHOD 4:

To a solution of 1.0 g (3.02 mmoles) of BS-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol in 9.0 mL of toluene was added 4.69 mg(0.03 mmoles) of 2,2,6,6-20 tetramethyl-1-piperidinyloxy, free radical (TEMPO), 0.32g(3.11 mmoles) of sodium bromide, 9.0 mL of ethyl acetate and 1.5 mL of water. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and an aqueous solution of 2.87 mL of 5% household bleach containing 0.735 g(8.75 mmoles) of sodium bicarbonate and 8.53 mL of water was added slowly over 25 The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 60 minutes. minutes. Two more additions (1.44 mL each) of bleach was added followed by stirring for 10 minutes. The two phase mixture was allowed to separate. The aqueous layer was 30 extracted twice with 20 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was washed with 4.0 mL of a solution containing 25 mg of potassium iodide and water(4.0 mL), 20 mL of 10% aqueous sodium thiosulfate 35 solution and then brine solution. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.34g of crude oil containing a small amount of the desired

product aldehyde, α S-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino] benzenepropanaldehyde.

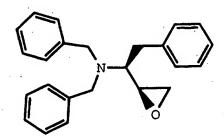
METHOD 5:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 1 of this Example except 3.0 equivalents of sulfur trioxide pyridine complex was used and αS-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde was isolated in comparable yields.

10

15

EXAMPLE 3



Preparation of N.N-dibenzyl-3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

METHOD 1:

A solution of αS -[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde (191.7 g, 0.58 mol) and chloroiodomethane 20 (56.4 mL, 0.77 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (1.8 L) was cooled to -30 to -35°C (colder temperature such as -70°C also worked well but warmer temperatures are more readily achieved in large scale operations) in a stainless steel reactor under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of nbutyl lithium in hexane (1.6 M, 365 mL, 0.58 mol) was then added at a rate that maintained the temperature below -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. More additions of reagents were carried out in the following manner: (1) additional chloroiodomethane (17 mL) was added, followed by n-butyl 30 lithium (110 mL) at < -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes.

repeated once. (2) Additional chloroiodomethane (8.5 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (55 mL, 0.088 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated 5 times. (3) Additional chloroiodomethane (8.5 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (37 mL, 0.059 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. repeated once. The external cooling was stopped and the mixture warmed to ambient temp. over 4 to 16 hours when 10 TLC (silica gel, 20% ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated that the reaction was completed. The reaction mixture was cooled to 10°C and quenched with 1452 g of 16% ammonium chloride solution (prepared by dissolving 232 g of ammonium chloride in 1220 mL of water), keeping the 15 temperature below 23°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and the organic and aqueous layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x 500 mL). The ethyl acetate layer was combined with the tetrahydrofuran layer. The 20 combined solution was dried over magnesium sulfate (220g), filtered and concentrated on a rotary evaporator at 65°C. The brown oil residue was dried at 70°C in vacuo (0.8 bar) for 1 h to give 222.8 g of crude material. (The crude product weight was >100%. Due to the relative 25 instability of the product on silica gel, the crude product is usually used directly in the next step without purification). The diastereomeric ratio of the crude mixture was determined by proton NMR: (2S)/(2R): 86:14. The minor and major epoxide diastereomers were characterized in this mixture by tlc analysis (silica gel, 10% ethyl acetate/hexane), Rf = 0.29 & 0.32, respectively. An analytical sample of each of the diastereomers was obtained by purification on silica-gel chromatography (3% ethyl acetate/hexane) and 35 characterized as follows:

 $N, N, \alpha S$ -Tris (phenylmethyl) -2S-oxiranemethanamine

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) ∂ 2.49 and 2.51 (AB-System, 1H, JAB = 2.82), 2.76 and 2.77 (AB-System, 1H, JAB = 4.03), 2.83 (m, 2H), 2.99 & 3.03 (AB-System, 1H, JAB = 10.1 Hz), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.73 & 3.84 (AB-System, 4H, JAB = 14.00), 7.21 (m, 15H); ¹³C NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) ∂ 139.55, 129.45, 128.42, 128.14, 128.09, 126.84, 125.97, 60.32, 54.23, 52.13, 45.99, 33.76; HRMS Calcd for C₂₄H₂₆NO (M+1) 344.477, found 344.2003.

 $N, N, \alpha S$ -Tris (phenylmethyl) -2R-oxiranemethanamine

METHOD 2:

A solution of the crude aldehyde 0.074 mol and 25 chloroiodomethane (7.0 ml, 0.096 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (285 ml) was cooled to -78°C, under a nitrogen atmosphere. A 1.6 M solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane (25 ml, 0.040 mol) was then added at a rate to maintain the temperature at -75°C (addition time - 15 30 min.). After the first addition, additional chloroiodomethane (1.6 ml, 0.022 mol) was added again, followed by n-butyl lithium (23 ml, 0.037 mol), keeping the temperature at -75° C. The mixture was stirred for 15 min. Each of the reagents, chloroiodomethane (0.70 ml, 0.010 mol) and n-butyl lithium (5 ml, 0.008 mol) were 35 added 4 more times over 45 min. at -75°C. The cooling bath was then removed and the solution warmed to 22°C

over 1.5 hr. The mixture was poured into 300 ml of saturated aq. ammonium chloride solution. The tetrahydrofuran layer was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (1 x 300 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil (27.4 g). The product could be used in the next step without purification. The desired diastereomer can be purified by recrystallization at a subsequent step. The product could also be purified by chromatography.

METHOD 3:

A solution of αS -[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde (178.84 g, 0.54 mol) and 15 bromochloromethane (46 mL, 0.71 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (1.8 L) was cooled to -30 to -35°C (colder temperature such as -70°C also worked well but warmer temperatures are more readily achieved in large scale operations) in a 20 stainless steel reactor under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane (1.6 M, 340 mL, 0.54 mol) was then added at a rate that maintained the temperature below -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. More additions 25 of reagents were carried out in the following manner: (1) additional bromochloromethane (14 mL) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (102 mL) at < -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated once. (2) Additional bromochloromethane (7 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed 30 by n-butyl lithium (51 mL, 0.082 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 This was repeated 5 times. (3) Additional minutes. bromochloromethane (7 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (51 mL, 0.082 mol) at <-25°C. After 35 addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated once. The external cooling

15

30

was stopped and the mixture warmed to ambient temp. over 4 to 16 hours when TLC (silica gel, 20% ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated that the reaction was The reaction mixture was cooled to 10°C and quenched with 1452 g of 16% ammonium chloride solution (prepared by dissolving 232 g of ammonium chloride in 1220 mL of water), keeping the temperature below 23°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and the organic and aqueous layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x 500 mL). acetate layer was combined with the tetrahydrofuran layer. The combined solution was dried over magnesium sulfate (220 g), filtered and concentrated on a rotary evaporator at 65°C. The brown oil residue was dried at 70°C in vacuo (0.8 bar) for 1 h to give 222.8 g of crude material.

METHOD 4:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example except the reaction temperatures were at -20°C. The resulting N,N,αS-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was a diastereomeric mixture of lesser purity then that of Method 3.

25 METHOD 5:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example except the reaction temperatures were at $-70--78^{\circ}\text{C}$. The resulting N,N, α S-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was a diastereomeric mixture, which was used directly in the subsequent steps without purification.

METHOD 6:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 35 3 of this Example except a continuous addition of bromochloromethane and n-butyl lithium was used at -30 to -35°C. After the reaction and work up procedures as

described in Method 3 of this Example, the desired $N, N, \alpha S$ -tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was isolated in comparable yields and purities.

5 METHOD 7:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 2 of this Example except dibromomethane was used instead of chloroiodomethane. After the reaction and work up procedures as described in Method 2 of this Example, the desired $N, N, \alpha S$ -tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxirane-methanamine was isolated.

EXAMPLE 4

15

10

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine

To a solution of crude N,N-dibenzyl-3(S)-amino1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane (388.5 g, 1.13 mol) in
isopropanol (2.7 L) (or ethyl acetate) was added
isobutylamine (1.7 kgm, 23.1 mol) over 2 min. The
temperature increased from 25°C and to 30°C. The
solution was heated to 82°C and stirred at this
temperature for 1.5 hours. The warm solution was
concentrated under reduced pressure at 65°C, The brown
oil residue was transferred to a 3-L flask and dried in
vacuo (0.8 mm Hg) for 16 h to give 450 g of 3S-[N,Nbis(phenylmethyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a crude
oil.

An analytical sample of the desired major diastereomeric product was obtained by purifying a small sample of crude product by silica gel chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane). Tlc analysis: silica gel, 40% ethyl acetate/hexane; Rf = 0.28; HPLC analysis: ultrasphere ODS column, 25% triethylamino-/phosphate buffer pH 3-acetonitrile, flow rate 1 mL/min, UV detector; retention time 7.49 min.; HRMS Calcd for C28H27N2O (M + 1) 417.616, found 417.2887. An analytical sample of the minor diastereomeric product, 3S-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2S-ol was also obtained by purifying a small sample of crude product by silica gel chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane).

15

EXAMPLE 5

20 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyll-N-isobutylamine•oxalic acid salt

To a solution of oxalic acid (8.08g, 89.72 mmol) in methanol (76 mL) was added a solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-25 bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol {39.68g, which contains about 25.44g (61.06 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 4.49g (10.78 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) in ethyl acetate (90 mL) over 15 minutes. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours. Solid was isolated by filtration, washed with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL) and dried in vacuo

for about 1 hour to yield 21.86g (70.7% isomer recovery) of 97% diastereomerically pure salt (based on HPLC peak areas). HPLC analysis: Vydec-peptide/protein C18 column, UV detector 254 nm, flow rate 2 mL/min., gradient {A = 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid in water, B = 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid in acetonitrile, 0 min. 75% A/25% B, 30 min. 10% A/90% B, 35 min. 10% A/90% B, 37 min. 75% A/25% B}; Retention time 10.68 min. (3(S),2(R) isomer) and 9.73 min. (3(S),2(S) isomer). Mp = 174.99°C;

10 Microanalysis: Calc.: C 71.05%, H 7.50%, N 5.53%; Found: C 71.71%, H 7.75%, N 5.39%.

Alternatively, oxalic acid dihydrate (119g, 0.94 mole) was added to a 5000 mL round bottom flask fitted 15 with a mechanical stirrer and a dropping funnel. Methanol (1000 ml) was added and the mixture stirred until dissolution was complete. A solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl) amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol in ethyl acetate (1800 ml, 20 0.212g amino alcohol isomers/mL, 0.9160 moles) was added over a twenty minute period. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours and the solid product was isolated by centrifugation in six portions at 400G. Each portion was washed with 125 mL of ethyl acetate. The salt was then 25 collected and dried overnight at 1 torr to yield 336.3 g of product (71% based upon total amino alcohol). HPLC/MS (electrospray) was consistent with the desired product $(m/z 417 [M+H]^+)$.

Alternatively, crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (5 g) was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (MTBE) (10 mL) and oxalic acid (1 g) in methanol (4 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for about 2 hours. The resulting solid was filtered, washed with cold MTBE and dried to yield 2.1 g of white solid of about 98.9% diastereomerically pure (based on HPLC peak areas).

EXAMPLE 6

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine acetic acid salt

To a solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol in methyl-tert-butylether (MTBE) (45 mL, 1.1g amino alcohol isomers/mL) was added acetic acid (6.9 mL) dropwise. mixture was stirred for about 1 hour at room temperature. The solvent was removed in vacuo to yield a brown oil about 85% diastereomerically pure product (based on HPLC peak areas). The brown oil was crystallized as follows: 0.2 g of the oil was dissolved in the first solvent with heat to obtain a clear solution, the second solvent was added until the solution became cloudy, the mixture was heated again to clarity, seeded with about 99% diastereomerically pure product, cooled to room temperature and then stored in a refrigerator overnight. The crystals were filtered, washed with the second solvent and dried. The diastereomeric purity of the crystals was calculated from the HPLC peak areas. results are shown in Table 1.

25

30

10

15

20

TABLE 1

First Solvent	Second Solvent	Solvent Ratio	Recovery Weight (g)	Diastereo- meric Purity (%)
MTBE	Heptane	1:10	0.13	98.3
MTBE	Hexane -	1:10	0.03	99.6
Methanol	Water	1:1.5	0.05	99.5
Toluene	Heptane	1:10	0.14	98.7
Toluene	Hexane	1:10	0.10	99.7

Alternatively, crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol

(50.0g, which contains about 30.06g (76.95 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 5.66g (13.58 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (45.0 mL). To this solution was added acetic acid (6.90 mL, 120.6 mmol) over a period of about 10 min. mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was purified by recrystallization from methyltert-butylether (32 mL) and heptane (320 mL). isolated by filtration, washed with cold heptane and 10 dried in vacuo for about 1 hour to afford 21.34g (58.2% isomer recovery) of 96% diastereomerically pure monoacetic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas). Mp = 105-106°C; Microanalysis: Calc.: C 75.53%, H 8.39%, N 15 5.87%; Found: C 75.05%, H 8.75%, N 5.71%.

EXAMPLE 7

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)hvdroxv-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine-L-tartaric acid salt

Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.48g, which contains about 6.72g (16.13 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and 25 about 1.19g (2.85 mmol) of 3(S), 2(S) isomer) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10.0 mL). To this solution was added a solution of L-tartaric acid (2.85g, 19 mmol) in methanol (5.0 mL) over a period of about 5 min. mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 10 min. 30 and concentrated under reduced pressure. Methyl-tertbutylether (20.0 mL) was added to the oily residue and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour. Solid was isolated by filtration to afford 7.50g of crude salt. The crude salt was purified by recrystallization from ethyl acetate and heptane at room 35 temperature to yield 4.13g (45.2% isomer recovery) of 95% diastereomerically pure L-tartaric acid salt (based on

HPLC peak areas). Microanalysis: Calc.: C 67.76%, H 7.41%, N 4.94%; Found: C 70.06%, H 7.47%, N 5.07%.

EXAMPLE 8

5

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyll-N-isobutylamine•dihydrochloric acid salt

10 Crude 3(S) - [N, N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.0g, which contains about 6.41g (15.39 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 1.13g (2.72 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer} was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20.0 mL). To this solution was added 15 hydrochloric acid (20 mL, 6.0 N) over a period of about 5 The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from ethanol at 0°C to yield 3.20g (42.7% isomer recovery) of 98% diastereomerically 20 pure dihydrochloric acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas). Microanalysis: Calc.: C 68.64%, H 7.76%, N 5.72%; Found: C 68.79%, H 8.07%, N 5.55%.

EXAMPLE 9

25

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyll-N-isobutylamine•toluenesulfonic acid salt

30 Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (5.0g, which contains about 3.18g (7.63 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 0.56g (1.35 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (10.0 mL). To this solution was added a solution of toluenesulfonic acid (2.28g, 12 mmol) in methyl-tert-butylether (2.0 mL) and methanol (2.0 mL) over a period of about 5 min. The

mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from methyl-tert-butylether and heptane at 0°C, filtered, washed with cold heptane and dried in vacuo to yield 1.85g (40.0% isomer recovery) of 97% diastereomerically pure monotoluenesulfonic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas).

EXAMPLE 10

10

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N.N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•methanesulfonic acid salt

15 Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.68g, which contains about 6.85g (16.44 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 1.21g (2.90 mmol) of 3(S), 2(S) isomer) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10.0 mL). To this solution 20 was added methanesulfonic acid (1.25 mL, 19.26 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was recrystallized from methanol and water at 0°C, filtered, washed with cold methanol/water (1:4) and dried in vacuo to yield 2.40g (28.5% isomer recovery) of 25 98% diastereomerically pure monomethanesulfonic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas).

EXAMPLE 11

30

Preparation of N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol

METHOD 1:

L-Phenylalaninol (89.51 g, 0.592 moles) was

5 dissolved in 375 mL of methanol under inert atmosphere,
35.52 g (0.592 moles) of glacial acetic acid and 50 mL of
methanol was added followed by a solution of 62.83 g

(0.592 moles) of benzaldehyde in 100 mL of methanol. mixture was cooled to approximately 15°C and a solution of 134.6 g(2.14 moles) of sodium cyanoborohydride in 700 mL of methanol was added in approximately 40 minutes, keeping the temperature between 15°C and 25°C. mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and partitioned between 1 L of 2M ammonium hydroxide solution and 2 L of ether. The ether layer was washed with 1 L of 1M ammonium hydroxide solution, twice with 500 mL water, 10 500 mL of brine and dried over magnesium sulfate for 1 hour. The ether layer was filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and the crude solid product was recrystallized from 110 mL of ethyl acetate and 1.3 L of 15 hexane to give 115 g (81% yield) of N-benzyl-Lphenylalaninol as a white solid.

METHOD 2:

35

L-Phenylalaninol (5 g, 33 mmoles) and 3.59 g (33.83 mmoles) of benzaldehyde were dissolved in 55 mL of 3A ethanol under inert atmosphere in a Parr shaker and the mixture was warmed to 60°C for 2.7 hours. The mixture was cooled to approximately 25°C and 0.99 g of 5% platinum on carbon was added and the mixture was 25 hydrogenated at 60 psi of hydrogen and 40°C for 10 hours. The catalyst was filtered off, the product was concentrated under reduced pressure and the crude solid product was recrystallized from 150 mL of heptane to give 3.83 g (48 % yield) of N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 12

Preparation of N-(t-Butoxvcarbonvl)-N-benzvl-L-phenylalaninol

N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol (2.9 g, 12 mmoles) was dissolved in 3 mL of triethylamine and 27 mL of methanol

and 5.25 g (24.1 mmoles) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate was added. The mixture was warmed to 60°C for 35 minutes and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 150 mL of ethyl acetate and washed twice with 10 mL of cold (0-5°C), dilute hydrochloric acid (pH 2.5 to 3), 15 mL of water, 10 mL of brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate: hexane, 12:3 as eluting solvent) to give 3.98 g (97% yield) of colorless oil.

EXAMPLE 13

Preparation of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal

METHOD 1:

To a solution of 0.32 g(0.94 mmoles) of N-(t-20 butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol in 2.8 mL of toluene was added 2.4 mg (0.015 mmoles) of 2,2,6,6tetramethyl-1-piperidinyloxy, free radical (TEMPO), 0.1g (0.97 mmoles) of sodium bromide, 2.8 mL of ethyl acetate and 0.34 mL of water. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and 25 an aqueous solution of 4.2 mL of 5% household bleach containing 0.23 g (3.0 mL, 2.738 mmoles) of sodium bicarbonate was added slowly over 30 minutes. mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 minutes. Three more additions (0.4 mL each) of bleach was added followed by 30 stirring for 10 minutes after each addition to consume all the stating material. The two phase mixture was allowed to separate. The aqueous layer was extracted twice with 8 mL of toluene. The combined organic layer was washed with 1.25 mL of a solution containing 0.075 g of potassium iodide, sodium bisulfate(0.125 g) and water(1.1 mL), 1.25 mL of 10% aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution, 1.25 mL of pH 7 phosphate buffer and 1.5 mL of

brine solution. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.32 g (100% yield) of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal.

5

10

15

METHOD 2:

To a solution of 2.38 g(6.98 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol in 3.8 mL (27.2 mmoles) of triethylamine at 10 °C was added a solution of 4.33 g (27.2 mmoles) of sulfur trioxide pyridine complex in 17 mL of dimethyl sulfoxide. The mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for one hour. Water (16 mL) was added and the mixture was extracted with 20 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 20 mL of 5% citric acid, 20 mL of water, 20 mL of brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2.37 g (100% yield) of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal.

20

EXAMPLE 14

Preparation of 3(S)-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzylamino]-1.2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

25

30

METHOD 1:

A solution of 2.5 g (7.37 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal and 0.72 mL of chloroiodomethane in 35 mL of THF was cooled to -78° C. A 4.64 mL of a solution of n-butyllithium (1.6 M in hexane, 7.42 mmoles) was added slowly, keeping the temperature

below -70°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75°C. Two additional portions of 0.22 mL of chloroiodomethane and 1.4 mL of n-butyllithium was added sequentially and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75 °C after each addition. Four additional portions of 0.11 mL of chloroiodomethane and 0.7 mL of n-butyllithium was added sequentially and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75°C after each addition. The mixture was warmed to room 10 temperature for 3.5 hours. The product was guenched at below 5°C with 24 mL of ice-cold water. The biphasic layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with 30 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers was washed three times with 10 mL water, then with 15 10 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2.8 g of a yellow crude oil. This crude oil (>100% yield) is a mixture of the diastereomeric epoxides N,αSbis (phenylmethyl) -N-(t-butoxycarbonyl) -2S-20 oxiranemethanamine and N,αS-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(tbutoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine. The crude mixture is used directly in the next step without purification.

METHOD 2:

25 To a suspension of 2.92 g (13.28 mmoles) of trimethylsulfoxonium iodide in 45 mL of acetonitrile was added 1.49 g (13.28 mmoles) of potassium t-butoxide. A solution of 3.0 g (8.85 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal in 18 mL of acetonitrile was 30 added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for one hour. The mixture was diluted with 150 mL of water and extracted twice with 200 mL of ethyl acetate. organic layers were combined and washed with 100 mL water, 50 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered 35 and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 3.0 g of a yellow crude oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane: 1: 8 as

eluting solvent) to give 1.02 g (32.7% yield) of a mixture of the two diastereomers N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine.

METHOD 3:

To a suspension of 0.90 g (4.42 mmoles) of trimethylsulfonium iodide in 18 mL of acetonitrile was added 0.495 g (4.42 mmoles) of potassium t-butoxide. A solution of 1.0 g (2.95 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal in 7 mL of acetonitrile was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for The mixture was diluted with 80 mL of water one hour. and extracted twice with 80 mL of ethyl acetate. organic layers were combined and washed with 100 mL water, 30 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.04 g of a yellow crude oil. The crude product was a mixture of . the two diastereomers $N, \alpha S$ -bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(tbutoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and $N, \alpha S$ bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2Roxiranemethanamine.

25

10

15

20

EXAMPLE 15

Preparation of 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-(phenylmethyl) aminol-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol

To a solution of 500 mg (1.42 mmoles) of the crude epoxide (a mixture of the two diastereomers N, αSbis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2Soxiranemethanamine and N,αS-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(tbutoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine) in 0.98 mL of isopropanol was added 0.71 mL (7.14 mmoles) of isobutylamine. The mixture was warmed to reflux at 85°C to 90°C for 1.5 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the product oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform:methanol, 100:6 10 as eluting solvents) to give 330 mg of 3S-[N-(tbutoxycarbonyl) -N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a colorless oil (54.5% yield). 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-15 (phenylmethyl) amino] -1 - (2 -methylpropyl) amino-4 phenylbutan-2S-ol was also isolated. When purified $N, \alpha S$ bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2Soxiranemethanamine was used as starting material, 3S-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl) -N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-20 methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol was isolated after purification by chromatography in an 86% yield.

EXAMPLE 16

25

Preparation of 3S-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-1,2R-diol

To a solution of 1 g (3.39 mmoles) of 2S-(N-t-30 butoxycarbonyl)amino-1S-hydroxy-3-phenylbutanoic acid (commercially available from Nippon Kayaku, Japan) in 50 mL of THF at 0 °C was added 50 mL of borane-THF complex (liquid, 1.0 M in THF), keeping the temperatures below

15

25

30

The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and 20 mL of water was added slowly to destroy the excess BH3 and to quench the product mixture, keeping the 5 temperature below 12°C. The quenched mixture was stirred for 20 minutes and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product mixture was extracted three times with 60 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 20 mL of water, 25 mL of saturated sodium chloride solution and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.1 g of crude oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform/methanol, 10:6 as eluting solvents) to give 900 mg (94.4% yield) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-4phenylbutan-1,2R-diol as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 17

$$\underbrace{\hspace{1cm} \bigcup_{OH}^{O}}_{OH} \underbrace{\hspace{1cm} \bigcup_{OH}^{O}}_{OH}$$

Preparation of 3S-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-20 phenylbut-1-vl Toluenesulfonate

To a solution of 744.8 mg (2.65 mmoles) of 3S-(N-tbutoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-1,2R-diol in 13 mL of pyridine at 0 °C was added 914 mg of toluenesulfonyl chloride in one portion. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C to 5°C for 5 hours. A mixture of 6.5 mL of ethyl acetate and 15 mL of 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added to the reaction mixture and stirred for 5 minutes. The product mixture was extracted three times with 50 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 15 mL of water, 10 mL of saturated sodium chloride solution and concentrated under reduced pressure

to give about 1.1 g of a yellow chunky solid. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane 1:3 as eluting solvents) to give 850 mg (74% yield) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl toluenesulfonate as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 18

10 Preparation of 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)aminol-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol

To a solution of 90 mg (0.207 mmoles) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl

15 toluenesulfonate in 0.143 mL of isopropanol and 0.5 mL of toluene was added 0.103 mL (1.034 mmoles) of isobutylamine. The mixture was warmed to 80 to 85 °C and stirred for 1.5 hours. The product mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure at 40 to 50 °C and purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform/methanol, 10:1 as eluting solvents) to give 54.9 mg (76.8% yield) of 3S-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 19

Preparation of N-[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyll-N-isobutylamine

Part A:

5

To a solution of 75.0g (0.226 mol) of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone 10 in a mixture of 807 mL of methanol and 807 mL of tetrahydrofuran at -2°C, was added 13.17g (0.348 mol, 1.54 equiv.) of solid sodium borohydride over one hundred The solvents were removed under reduced pressure at 40°C and the residue dissolved in ethyl 15 acetate (approx. 1L). The solution was washed sequentially with 1M potassium hydrogen sulfate, saturated sodium bicarbonate and then saturated sodium chloride solutions. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and filtering, the solution was removed under reduced pressure. To the resulting oil was added 20 hexane (approx. 1L) and the mixture warmed to 60°C with swirling. After cooling to room temperature, the solids were collected and washed with 2L of hexane. resulting solid was recrystallized from hot ethyl acetate and hexane to afford 32.3g (43% yield) of 25 N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)butanol, mp $150-151^{\circ}$ C and M+Li⁺ = 340.

Part B:

To a solution of 6.52g (0.116 mol, 1.2 equiv.) of potassium hydroxide in 968 mL of absolute ethanol at room

temperature, was added 32.3g (0.097 mol) of N-CBZ-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-pheny1-2(S)-butanol. After stirring for fifteen minutes, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the solids dissolved in methylene chloride.

5 After washing with water, drying over magnesium sulfate, filtering and stripping, one obtains 27.9g of a white solid. Recrystallization from hot ethyl acetate and hexane afforded 22.3g (77% yield) of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane, mp 102-103°C and MH+ 298.

Part C:

A solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl 3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane (1.00g, 3.36 mmol) and isobutylamine (4.90g, 67.2 mmol, 20 equiv.) in 10 mL of isopropyl alcohol was heated to reflux for 1.5 hours. The solution was cooled to room temperature, concentrated in vacuo and then poured into 100 mL of stirring hexane whereupon the product crystallized from solution. The product was isolated by filtration and air dried to give 1.18g, 95% of N-[[3(S)-phenylmethylcarbamoyl)amino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]N-[(2-methylpropyl)]amine, C22H30N2O3, mp 108.0-109.5°C, MH+ m/z = 371.

25

30

EXAMPLE 20

Preparation of phenylmethyl [2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl) (phenylsulfonyl)aminol-1S-

(phenylmethyl)propyl)carbamate

From the reaction of N[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl] N-isoamylamine (1.47 gm, 3.8 mmol), triethylamine (528 uL, 3.8 mmol) and benzenesulfonyl chloride (483 uL, 3.8 mmol) one obtains phenylmethyl [2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl) (phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-carbamate. Column chromotography on silica gel eluting with chloroform containing 1% ethanol afforded the pure product. Anal. Calcd for C29H36N2O5S: C, 66.39; H, 6.92; N, 5.34. Found: C, 66.37; H, 6.93; N, 5.26.

EXAMPLE 21

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl]
(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

Part A: Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

To a solution of 4.0 g (10.8 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 50mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 4.5mL (3.27g, 32.4 mmol) of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 2.63g (11.9 mmol) of 4-nitrobenzene sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C, then for 1 hour at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated socium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield 5.9 g of crude material. This was recrystallized from ethyl

acetate/hexane to afford 4.7 g of pure carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester, m/e=556(M+H).

5

Part B: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-aminophenyl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine

10 A solution of 3.0g (5.4 mmol) of carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 20 mL of ethyl acetate was hydrogenated over 1.5 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst under 35 psig of hydrogen for 3.5 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solution concentrated to afford 2.05 g of the desired 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine, m/e=392(M+H).

20

EXAMPLE 22

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(3-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

Part A: Preparation of Carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-nitrophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

25

To a solution of 1.1 g (3.0 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 15mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 1.3mL (0.94g, 9.3 mmol) of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 0.67 g (3.0 mmol) of 3-nitrobenzene sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C, then for 1 hour at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield 1.74 g of crude material. This was recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to afford 1.40 g of pure carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-nitrophenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester, m/e=562(M+Li).

15

10

Part B: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(3-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

A solution of 1.33g (2.5 mmol) of carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-nitrophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 40 mL of 1:1 methanol/tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated over 0.70 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst under 40 psig of hydrogen for 1.5 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solution concentrated to afford 0.87 g of the desired [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(3-aminophenyl)sulfonyl] (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine.

25

72

EXAMPLE 23

Preparation of 2S-((pvrrolidin-1-vl))acetylaminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-(2-methylpropyl)-N¹-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-vlsulfonyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide

Part A: Preparation of pyrrolidineacetic acid 10 hydrochloride

A solution of 19.6 grams (101 mmol) of t-butyl bromoacetate in 150 mL of THF was cooled in an ice bath and treated dropwise over about 0.5 hour with a solution of 14.4 grams (202 mmol) of pyrrolidine in 75 mL of THF, to produce a white precipitate. The bath was removed and the reaction slurry stirred for two hours. The solid was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to yield a clear liquid over an orange-colored solid. The liquid was cooled in an ice bath, then treated with 40 mL (80 mmol) of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo, and the residue was triturated with diethyl ether, then filtered to yield 12.9 grams of the desired acid as an off-white solid.

Part B: Preparation of 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl) sulfonyl chloride

30 To a solution of 3.35g of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C under nitrogen was added 6.18 g of sulfuryl

chloride, whereupon a solid formed. After stirring for 15 minutes, 4.69 g of 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran was added, and the mixture heated at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction was cooled, poured into ice water, extracted with methylene chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated the crude material. This was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to afford 2.45 g of 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl) sulfonyl chloride.

Part C: Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-y1)sulfony1](2-methylpropy1) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propy1-, phenylmethyl ester

To a solution of 1.11 g (3.0 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy 15 carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 20mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 1.3mL (0.94 g, 9.3 mmol) of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 0.66 g of 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl) sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 15 minutes at 20 0°C, then for 2 hour at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield 1.62 g of crude material. This was recrystallized from diethyl ether to afford 1.17 g of pure carbamic acid, 25 [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-,

Part D: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydro benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

phenylmethyl ester.

A solution of 2.86 g of carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) 35 amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 30 mL of tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated 0.99g of 10% palladium-on-carbon under 50 psig of hydrogen for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate concentrated to afford 1.99 g of the desired [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine.

5

Part E: Preparation of 2S-[(carbobenzyloxy)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide

10

A solution of 5.8 grams (22.0 mmol) of N-CBZ-L-isoleucine in 45 mL of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) was cooled to 0°C and charged with 3.9 grams (28.7 mmol) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT) and 4.2 grams (22.0 mmol) 15 of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC). The ice bath was removed after 20 minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 The reaction solution was then charged with a minutes. solution of 8.0 grams (19.1 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-20 dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine and 2.2 grams (22.0 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate 25 and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 16.7 grams of crude material. The crude material 30 was crystallized from ethanol to yield 12.0 grams (94%) of 2S-[(carbobenzyloxy)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3methylpropyl) (2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide: m/e = 67235 (M+Li).

- Part F: Preparation of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide
- 5 A Fischer-Porter bottle equipped with a magnetic stir bar was charged with 11.9 grams (17.9 mmol) of 2S-[(carbobenzyloxy)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl) (2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide and 75 mL of 10 tetrahydrofuran (THF). The solution was hydrogenated in the presence of 5 grams of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst (50% water by weight) under 50 psig of hydrogen for 4 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvent removed in vacuo. 15 The residue was dissolved in 300 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 8.8 grams of the desired product, m/e = 532 20 (M+H).
 - Part G: Preparation of 2S-[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetylamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-(2-methylpropyl)-N¹-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 3.7 grams (22.1 mmol) of pyrrolidineacetic acid hydrochloride in 45 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C and charged with 3.4 grams (24.7 mmol) of HOBT and 3.6 grams (19.0 mmol) of EDC. The ice bath was removed after 20 minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 minutes. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 8.8 grams (16.5 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(2,3-dihydro benzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide and 4.5 grams (44.1 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred

for 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 9.9 grams of crude material. The coupling reaction was run again using 2.5 grams (15.1 mmol) of 10 pyrrolidineacetic acid hydrochloride, 2.3 grams (17.0 mmol) of HOBT, 2.45 grams (12.8 mmol) of EDC, 3.0 grams (30.0 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine, and the 9.9 grams of crude product in place of the amine from Part B. reaction work-up was repeated and yielded 10.2 grams of 15 crude product. Purification was accomplished using a Prep 2000 chromatograph on silica gel using 70-100% (5% methanol/95% ethyl acetate)/hexane to yield the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 649 (M+Li).

20

EXAMPLE 24

Preparation of N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-[N-1-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine

To a solution of 7.51g (20.3 mmol) of N-[3S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-30 2-methylpropylamine in 67 mL of anhydrous tetrahydrofurar. was added 2.25g (22.3 mmol) of triethylamine. After cooling to 0°C, 4.4g (20.3 mmol) of di-tert-

butyldicarbonate was added and stirring continued at room temperature for 21 hours. The volatiles were removed in vacuo, ethyl acetate added, then washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 9.6g of crude product. Chromatography on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate/hexane afforded 8.2g of pure N-[[3S-(phenylmethylcarbamoyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-1-[(2-methylpropyl)amino-2-(1,1-

dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]butane, mass spectum m/e = 477
(M+Li).

EXAMPLE 25

Preparation of 2S-[[bromoacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-(3-methyl-butyl)-N¹-(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S[phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutaneamide

20

25

30

Part A:

To a solution of N-CBZ-L-tert-leucine (450 mg, 1.7 mmol) and N-hydroxybenzotriazole (260 mg, 1.7 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added EDC (307 mg, 1.6 mmol). The solution was stirred for 60 minutes at room temperature and then 2R-hydroxy-3-[N-(3-methylbutyl)-N-(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (585 mg, 1.5 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added. The reaction was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature, then poured into a 50% saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate (200 mL). The aqueous mixture was extracted thrice with ethyl

acetate (50 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with water (50 mL) and saturated NaCl solution (50 mL), then dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration produced an oil which was chromatographed on silica gel (50 gm) eluting with 20% ethyl acetate in hexane. The phenylmethyl [1S-[[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl) (phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]amino] carbonyl]-2,2-dimethylpropyl]carbamate was obtained as a solid Anal.

10 Calcd for C35H47N3O6S: C, 65.91; H, 7.43; N, 6.59. Found: C, 65.42; H, 7.24; N, 6.55.

Part B:

A solution of phenylmethyl [1S-[[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl)(phenylsulfonyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]amino]carbonyl]-2,2-dimethylpropyl]carbamate (200 mg, 0.31 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium on carbon for 2 hours. The reaction was filtered through diatomaceous earth and concentrated to an oil.

Part C:

The resulting free amine from part B (150 mg, 0.3 mmol) was combined with diisopropylethylamine (114 uL, 0.33 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). To this was added 25 bromoacetyl chloride (27 uL, 0.33 mmol) dropwise. reaction was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature, then diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL) and extracted with 1 N HCl, water, and then saturated NaCl solution (25 mL each). The organic solution was dried over MgSO4 and 30 concentrated to a solid. The 2S-[[bromoacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl)(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutaneamide was sufficiently pure for use in the next step. material can also be prepared by substituing bromoacetic 35 anhydride for bromoacetyl chloride, or one can use chloroacetyl chloride or chloracetic anhydride.

EXAMPLE 26

5

Preparation of 2S-[chloroacetylamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-(2-methylbutyl)-N¹-(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyll-3S-methylpentanamide

10 Part A:

To a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[N-(3-methylbutyl)-N-(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine (2.79 g, 7.1 mmol) in 27 mL of dioxane was added (2.3 g, 7.1 mmol) of N-t-butylcarbonyl-L-isoleucine-N-

- hydroxysuccinamide ester, and the reaction was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 16 hours. The contents of the reaction were concentrated in vacuo, and the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with potassium hydrogen sulfate (5% aqueous), saturated sodium
- bicarbonate, and saturated sodium chloride. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 4.3 grams of crude material which was chromatographed using 3:1 ethyl acetate: hexane to obtain 3.05g, 72% yield of Pentanamide, 2S-[[(1,1-
- 25 dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3methylbutyl)phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-.

Part B

(3.05g, 5.0 mmol) of the product from Part A was dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1.5 hours. The contents were concentrated in vacuo, and chased with diethyl ether. The crude hydrochloride salt was pumped on at 1 mm Hg until dry to yield 2.54 g of product as its hydrochloride salt.

10 Part C:

15

20

25

(2.54 g, 5.0 mmol) of amine hydrochloride was dissolved in 50 mL of tetrahydrofuran and to this was added (1.01 g, 10 mmol) of 4-methyl-morpholine, at which time a precipitate forms. To this suspension was added chloroacetic anhydride (0.865 g, 5.0 mmol) and stirred for 40 minutes. The contents were concentrated in vacuo, and the residue partitioned in ethyl acetate (200 mL) and 5% KHSO4. The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, and saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield the crude product. Purification by silica gel chromatography using an eluant of 1:1 ethyl acetate: hexanes yielded 1.89 grams of pure chloroacetamide.

EXAMPLE 27

Preparation of 2S-[(pvrrolidin-1-vl)acetvlamino]-N-[2R-30 hydroxy-3-[N¹-(2-methylpropyl)-N¹-(4-methoxyphenyl sulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyll-3S-methylpentanamide

Part A:

To a cooled solution of N-t-Boc-L-isoleucine 2.31g (10 mmol) and 2.00g (13.11 mmol) of N- $\,$

- hydroxybenzotriazole in 17 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide was added 1.91g (10 mmol) of EDC and stirred at 0°C for one hour. To this was added a solution of 4.0g (10 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)
- propylamine in 6 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide and the solution stirred for 16 hours. The solvent was removed by rotory evaporation, replaced with ethyl acetate, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, 5% citric acid and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium
- sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 6.1 grams of crude product, which was chromatoraphed on silica gel using and eluant of 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to produce 5.12g (83% yield) of 2S-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)
- amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide.

Part B:

25

30

5.00 g (8.0 mmol) of the product from Part A was dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 20 minutes. The precipitated product was stripped two times from diethyl ether to yield 2S-(amino)-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide•hydrochloride, which was used in Part C without further purification.

Part C:

The amine hydrochloride from part B was dissolved in 45 mL of methylene chloride and 3.0 grams N,N-disopropylethylamine was added, followed by 1.22g (7.11 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The contents

were concentrated in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide as a crude white foam, which was used in Part D without further purification.

Part D:

4.8 g (8.0 mmol) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2Rhydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide was 15 dissoved in 15 mL of tetrahydofuran and to this was added water followed by 2.8 mL (40 mmol) of pyrrolidine and the reaction stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The mixture was washed successively with 20 saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield 5.6 grams of crude product. Purification by silica gel flash chromatograpy using an eluant of 1-3% methanol in dichloromethane yielded 3.2 grams of 25-[(pyrrolidin-25 1-yl) acetylamino] -N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N^1 -(2-methylpropyl) - N^{1} -(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 28

5 Preparation of Carbamic acid. 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-aminobenzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, 10 phenylmethyl ester 0.30 g (0.571 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (1.20 g) and potassium thiocyanate (1.50 g) followed by dry methanol (6 mL) and the resulting black-brown suspension 15 was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (5 mL) and heated at reflux: Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. The filtrate upon concentration afforded a residue which was 20 chromatographed (ethyl acetate:hexane 80:20) to afford 0.26 g (78%) of the desired compound as a solid.

EXAMPLE 29

Preparation of Carbamic acid. 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

5

15

Method 1:

Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-aminobenzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl-, phenylmethyl ester (0.25 g, 0.429 mmol) was added to a solution of isoamylnitrite (0.116 mL, 0.858 mmol) in dioxane (5 mL) and the mixture was heated at 85°C. After the cessation of evolution of nitrogen, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate 5:3) to afford 0.130 g (53%) of the desired product as a solid.

Method 2:

Crude benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl chloride in ethyl acetate (100 mL) was added to N-[3S-benzyloxycarbonyl amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine (1.03 g, 2.78 mmol) followed by N-methylmorpholine (4 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 18 hr., the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with citric acid (5%, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO4) and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:1) to afford 0.340 g (23%) of desired product.

EXAMPLE 30

- Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hvdroxy-3-[[(2-amino benzothiazol-5-vl)sulfonvl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester; and Carbamic acid. 2R-hvdroxy-3-[[(2-aminobenzothiazol-7-vl)sulfonvl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-,
- 10 phenylmethyl ester

The carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-aminophenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester 0.36 g (0.685 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (1.44 g) and potassium thiocyanate (1.80 g) followed by dry methanol (10 mL) and the rsulting black-brown suspension was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (5 mL) and heated at reflux. Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. The filtrate upon concentration afforded a rseidue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:nexane 1:1) to afford 0.18 g (45%) of the 7-isomer as a solid. Further elution of

the column with (ethyl acetate:hexane 3:2) afforded 0.80 g (20%) afforded the 5-isomer as a solid.

EXAMPLE 31

5

$$H_2N$$
 OH
 OCH_3

Preparation of 3S-amino-1-[N-(2-methylpropyl)-N-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)aminol-4-phenyl-2R-butanol

10

15

20

Part A: N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol

To a solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone (75 g, 0.2 mol) in a mixture of 800 mL of methanol and 800 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added sodium borohydride (13.17 g, 0.348 mol, 1.54 equiv.) over 100 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 1000 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 1N KHSO $_4$, saturated aqueous NaHCO $_3$, saturated aqueous NaCl, dried over anhydrous MgSO $_4$, filtered and

concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil. The crude product was dissolved in 1000 mL of hexanes at 60°C and allowed to cool to room temperature where upon crystals formed that were isolated by filtration and washed with copious amounts of hexanes. This solid was then recrystallized from hot ethyl acetate and hexanes to provide 32.3 g 43% of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-

butanol, mp 150-151°C, FAB MS: MLi⁺ = 340.

30

25

Part B: 3(S)-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

A solution of potassium hydroxide (6.52 g. 0.116 mol, 1.2 equiv.) in 970 mL of absolute ethanol was treated with N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol (32.3 g, 0.097 mol). This solution was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes and then concentrated in vacuo to give a white solid. The solid was dissovled in dichloromethane and washed with water, dried over anhyd MgSO₄, filetered and concentrated in vacuo to give a white solid. The solid was crystallized from hexanes and ethyl acetate to give 22.3 g, 77% of 3(S)-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl) amino]-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane, mp 102-103°C, FAB MS: MH⁺ = 298.

Part C: N-[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-15 phenyl]N-isobutylamine A solution of N-benzylcarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenyl butane (50.0 g, 0.168 mol) and isobutylamine (246 g, 3.24 mol, 20 equivalents) in 650 mL of isopropyl alcohol was heated to reflux for 1.25 hours. 20 solution was cooled to room temperature, concentrated in vacuo and then poured into 1 L of stirring hexane whereupon the product crystallized from solution. product was isolated by filtration and air dried to give 57.56 g, 92% of N[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-25 hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine, mp 108.0-109.5°C, MH+ m/z=371.

Part D: phenylmethyl [2(R)-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-methylpropyl)-N-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S30 (phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamate
The amine from Part C (936.5 mg, 2.53 mmol) and
triethylamine (2.88.5 mg, 2.85 mmol) was dissolved in 20
mL of dichloromethane and treated with 4methoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride (461 mg, 2.61 mmol). The
35 solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and
then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in
ethyl acetate and this solution was washed with 1N KHSO_A,

saturated aqueous NaHCO $_3$, brine, dried over anhyd MgSO $_4$, filtered, and concentrated to give a clear oil 1.234 g. The oil was crystallized from a mixture of ether and hexanes, 729.3 mg, 56.5% mp 95-99°C, FAB MS: MH $^+$ = 511.

5

Part E: 3S-amino-1-[N-(2-methylpropyl)-N-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-4-phenyl-2R-butanol
A solution of phenylmethyl [2(R)-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-methylpropyl)-N-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]1-S
(phenylmethyl) propyl carbamate (671.1 mg, 1.31 mmol)
from Part D in 10 mL of methanol was hydrogenated over 50 mg of 10% palladium on carbon at 40 psig at room temperature for 15 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate concentrated to give a white foam, 474.5 mg, 96%, FAB MS: MH+ = 377.

EXAMPLE 32

CISCO

20

Preparation of 1.3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride

Method 1:

To a solution of 4.25 g of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C under nitrogen was added 7.84g of sulfuryl chloride, whereupon a solid formed. After stirring for 15 minutes, 6.45 g of 1,3-benzodioxole was added, and the mixture heated at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction was cooled, poured into ice water, extracted with methylene chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give 7.32 g of crude material as a black oil. This was chromatographed on silica gel using 20% methylene chloride/hexane to afford 1.9 g of (1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl chloride.

Method 2:

To a 22 liter round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer, a cooling condenser, a heating mantle and a pressure equalizing dropping funnel was added sulfur trioxide DMF complex (2778g, 18.1 moles). Dichloroethane (4 liters) was then added and stirring initiated. 1,3-Benzodioxole (1905g, 15.6 moles) as then added through the dropping funnel over a five minute 10 The temperature was then raised to 75°C and held for 22 hours (NMR indicated that the reaction was done after 9 hours.) The reaction was cooled to 26° and oxalyl chloride (2290g, 18.1 moles) was added at a rate so as to maintain the temperature below 40°C (1.5 hours). 15 The mixture was heated to 67°C for 5 hours followed by cooling to 16°C with an ice bath. The reaction was quenched with water (5 1) at a rate which kept the temperature below 20°C. After the addition of water was complete, the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The 20 layers were separated and the organic layer was washed again twice with water (51). The organic layer was dried with magnesium sulfate (500g) and filtered to remove the drying agent. The solvent was removed under vacuum at The resulting warm liquid was allowed to cool at. 25 which time a solid began to form. After one hour, the solid was washed with hexane (400 mL), filtered and dried to provide the desired sulfonyl chloride (2823g). The hexane wash was concentrated and the resulting solid washed with 400 mL hexane to provide additional sulfonyl 30 chloride (464g). The total yield was 3287g (95.5% based upon 1,3-benzodioxole).

Method 3:

1,4-benzodioxan-6-sulfonyl chloride was prepared according to the procedure disclosed in EP 583960, incorporated herein by reference.

EXAMPLE 33

5 Preparation of 1-[N-[(1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)aminol-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)aminol-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol

Method 1:

10 To a 5000 mL, 3-necked flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer was added N-[3(S)-[N,Nbis (phenylmethyl) amino] -2 (R) -hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl] -Nisobutylamine • oxalic acid salt (354.7 g, 0.7 mole) and 1,4-dioxane (2000 mL). A solution of potassium carbonate 15 (241.9 g, 1.75 moles) in water (250 mL) was then added. The resultant heterogeneous mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature followed by the addition of 1,3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride (162.2 g, 0.735 mole) dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (250 mL) over 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (1000 mL) and water (500 mL) were charged to the reactor and stirring continued for another 1 hour. The aqueous layer was separated and further extracted with ethyl acetate (200 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with 25% brine 25 solution (500 mL) and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. After filtering and washing the magnesium sulfate with ethyl acetate (200 mL), the solvent in the filtrate was removed under reduced pressure yielding the desired sulfonamide as an viscous yellow foamy oil 30

(440.2g 105% yield). HPLC/MS (electrospray) (m/z 601 [M+H]+].

EXAMPLE 34

5

Preparation of 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-amino-4-phenyl-2(R)-

10 <u>butanol•methanesulfonic acid salt</u>

Method 1:

Crude 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-15 phenyl-2(R)-butanol (6.2g, 0.010 moles) was dissolved in methanol (40 mL). Methanesulfonic acid (0.969g, 0.010 moles) and water (5 mL) were then added to the solution. The mixture was placed in a 500 mL Parr hydrogenation bottle containing 20% Pd(OH)2 on carbon (255 mg, 50% 20 water content). The bottle was placed in the hydrogenator and purged 5 times with nitrogen and 5 times with hydrogen. The reaction was allowed to proceed at 35°C with 63 PSI hydrogen pressure for 18 hours. Additional catalyst (125 mg) was added and, after purging, the 25 hydrogenation continued for and additional 20 hours. mixture was filtered through celite which was washed with methanol (2 X 10 mL). Approximately one third of the methanol was removed under reduced pressure. remaining methanol was removed by aziotropic distillation 30 with toluene at 80 torr. Toluene was added in 15, 10, 10 and 10 mL portions. The product crystallized from the

mixture and was filtered and washed twice with 10 mL portions of toluene. The solid was dried at room temperature at 1 torr for 6 hours to yield the amine salt (4.5 g, 84%). HPLC/MS (electrospray) was consistent with the desired product (m/z 421 [M+H]+).

Method 2:

Part A: N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine.oxalic acid salt 10 (2800g, 5.53 moles) and THF (4L) were added to a 22L round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Potassium carbonate (1921g, 13.9 moles) was dissolved in water (2.8L) and added to the THF slurry. The mixture was then stirred for one hour. 1,3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride (1281g, 5.8 moles) was dissolved in THF (1.4L) 15 and added to the reaction mixture over 25 minutes. An additional 200 mL of THF was used to rinse the addition The reaction was allowed to stir for 14 hours and then water (4 L) was added. This mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and the layers allowed to separate. 20 layers was removed and the aqueous layer washed twice with THF (500 mL). The combined THF layers were dried with magnesium sulfate (500 g) for one hour. This solution was then filtered to remove the drying agent and used in subsequent reactions. 25

Part B: To the THF solution of crude 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol was added water (500 mL) followed by methane sulfonic acid (531g, 5.5 moles). The solution was stirred to insure complete mixing and added to a 5 gallon autoclave. Pearlman's catalyst (200g of 20% Pd(OH)2 on C/50% water) was added to the autoclave with the aid of THF (500 mL). The reactor was purged four times with nitrogen and four times with hydrogen. The reactor was charged with 60 psig of hydrogen and stirring at 450 rpm started. After 16 hours, HPLC analysis indicated that a small amount of

the mono-benzyl intermediate was still present.

Additional catalyst (50g) was added and the reaction was allowed to run overnight. The solution was then filtered through celite (500g) to remove the catalyst and

5 concentrated under vacuum in five portions. To each portion, toluene (500 mL) was added and removed under vacuum to azeotropically removed residual water. The resulting solid was divided into three portions and each washed with methyl t-butyl ether (2 L) and filtered. The residual solvent was removed at room temperature in a vacuum oven at less than 1 torr to yield the 2714g of the expected salt.

If desired, the product can be further purified by the following procedure. A total of 500 mL of methanol and 170g of material from above was heated to reflux until it all dissolved. The solution was cooled, 200 mL of isopropanol added and then 1000-1300 mL of hexane, whereupon a white solid precipitated. After cooling to 0°C, this precipitate was collected and washed with hexane to afford 123g of the desired material. Through this procedure, the original material which was a 95:5 mixture of alcohol diastereomers was greater than 99:1 of the desired diastereomer.

25

EXAMPLE 35

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-30 yl)sulfonvl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine Part A: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

5

To a solution of 3.19 g(8.6 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 40mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 0.87g of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 1.90g 10 of (1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl) sulfonyl chloride was added. stirred for 15 minutes at 0°C, then for 17 hours at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield crude material. This was 15 recrystallized from diethyl ether/hexane to afford 4.77 g of pure 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester.

Part B: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine

A solution of 4.11 g of carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 45 mL of
tetrahydrofuran and 25 mL of methanol was hydrogenated
over 1.1 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon under 50 psig of
hydrogen for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by

filtration and the filtrate concentrated to afford 1.82g
of the desired 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propylamine.

EXAMPLE 36

5 Preparation of Benzothiazole-6-sulfonvl Chloride

Part A: Preparation of N-(4-Sulfonamidophenyl)thiourea

A mixture of sulfanilamide (86 g, 0.5 mole), ammonium thiocyanate (76.0 g, 0.5 mole) and dilute hydrochloric acid (1.5 N, 1 L) was mechanically stirred and heated at reflux for 2 hr. About 200 mL of water was distilled off and concentration of the reaction mixture afforded a solid. The solid was filtered and was washed with cold water and air dried to afford 67.5 g (59%) of the desired product as a white powder.

Part B: Preparation of 2-Amino-6-sulfonamidobenzothiazole

- Bromine (43.20 g, 0.27 mol) in chloroform (200 mL) was added over 1 hr. to a suspension of N-(4-sulfonamidophenyl)-thiourea (27.72, 0.120 mol) in chloroform (800 mL). After the addition, the reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 4.5 hr. The chloroform was removed in vacuo and the residue was repeatedly distilled with additional amounts of chloroform. The solid obtained was treated with water (600 mL) followed by ammonium hydroxide (to make it basic), then was heated at reflux for 1 hr. The cooled reaction mixture was
 - Part C: Preparation of Benzothiazole-6-sulfonic acid

g (80%) of the desired product as a white powder.

filtered, washed with water and air dried to afford 22.0

A suspension of 2-amino-6-sulfonamido-benzothiazole (10.0 g, 43.67 mmol) in dioxane (300 mL) was heated at reflux. Isoamylnitrite (24 mL) was added in two portions to the reaction mixture. Vigorous evolution of gas was observed (the reaction was conducted behind a shield as a precaution) and after 2 hr., a red precipitate was deposited in the reaction vessel. The reaction mixture was filtered hot, and the solid was washed with dioxane and was dried. The solid was recrystallized from methanol-water. A small amount of a precipitate was formed after 2 days. The precipitate was filtered off and the mother liquor was concentrated in vacuo to afford a pale red-orange solid (8.0 g, 85%) of pure product.

15 Part D: Preparation of 6-Chlorosulfonylbenzothiazole

Thionyl chloride (4 mL) was added to a suspension of the benzothiazole-6-sulfonic acid (0.60 g, 2.79 mmol) in dichloroethane (15 mL) and the reaction mixture was heated at reflux and dimethylformamide (5 mL) was added to the reaction mixture to yield a clear solution. After 1.5 hr. at reflux, the solvent was removed in vacuo and excess HCl and thionyl chloride was chased by evaporation with dichloroethane.

25

20

EXAMPLE 37

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-15-(phenylmethyl)
propyll-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3.3-dimethylbutanamide

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

To a solution of 118.8 g (0.776 mol) of Nhydroxybenzotriazole and 137.1 g (0.52 mol) of N-10 carbobenzyloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine in 750 mL of anhydrous DMF at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere, was added 109.1 g (0.57 mol) of EDC. After stirring at 0°C for 2 hours, a solution of 273 g (0.53 mol) of 2Rhydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-15 methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine methanesulfonate, previously neutralized with 228 mL (210g, 2.08 mol) of 4-methylmorpholine, in 250 mL of anhydrous DMF was added. After stirring at 0°C for 30 minutes, the mixture stirred at room temperature for 18 20 hours. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure at 45°C, 1.5 L of ethyl acetate added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicabonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 400g of crude material. 25 chromatographed in 3 batches on a Prep 2000 Chromatogram on silica gel using 20%-50% ethyl acetate/hexane as eluent to yield 320g of purified material, m/e=674 (M+Li), 98% by HPLC.

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of 312g of the Cbz compound from above in 1L of tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated in the presence of 100g of 4% palladium-on-carbon catalyst under 60 psig of hydrogen for 6 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solvents removed under reduced pressure to afford 240g of the desired compound.

10 Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3dimethylbutanamide

15

20

To a solution of 234.3 g (0.439 mol) of the amine from above in 1L of methylene chloride, was added 80 mL (59.5 g, 0.46 mol) of diisopropylethylamine, followed by the slow addition at room temperature of 78.8 g (0.46 mol) of chloroacetic anhydride while maintaining the temperature below 35°C. After stirring for an additional 1 hour, analysis by HPLC indicated a small amount of starting material was still present, and 1.5 g of chloroacetic anhydride was added. After 10 minutes, the solvents were 25 removed under reduced pressure, 1 L ethyl acetate added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate,

brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 314 g of crude material. This was chromatographeed in 3 portions on a Prep 2000 Chromatogram on silica gel using 20-50% ethyl acetate/hexane to afford 165 g of the desired compound, m/e=616 (M+Li), 98% by HPLC.

Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

To 164.2 g (0.27 mol) of chloroacetyl compound from above 15 was added 500 mL of tetrahydrofuran, the solvent removed under reduced pressure to remove any ethyl acetate, and then 350 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added. To this solution at 10°C was added 130 mL (1.56 mol) of pyrrolidine. After 1 hour, the solvents were removed 20 under reduced pressure, 1 L ethyl acetate added, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 185 g of crude material, which was assayed by HPLC to be 98.9% purity. This was split into 3 portions and chromatographed on a Prep 2000 Chromatogram using first 25 50% ethyl acetate/hexane, followed by 5% methanol/ethyl acetate to afford 160g of purified material (99% by HPLC). This was then recrystallized from 460 mL of diethyl ether and 70 mL of hexane to afford 121g of the desired product (>99% by HPLC), m/e=651(M+Li), mp=112-30 114°C.

EXAMPLE 38

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonvll(2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-

5 (phenylmethyl)propyll-2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyl]aminol-3S-methylpentanamide

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)
carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

To a cooled solution of N-t-Boc-L-isoleucine 2.02g (8.74 mmol) and 2.00g (13.11 mmol) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole in 17 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide was added 1.84g (9.61 mmol) of EDC and stirred at 0°C for one hour. To this was added a solution of 3.67g (8.74 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl amine in 6 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide and the solution stirred for 16 hours. The solvent was removed in vacuo, replaced with ethyl acetate, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, 5% citric acid and brine. The organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to

yield 6.1 grams of crude product, which was chromatoraphed on silica gel using 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane eluant to produce 4.3 g (78% yield) of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide.

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3Smethylpentanamide•hydrochloride salt

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](215 methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide
(4.29g, 6.77 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in
dioxane and stirred for 20 minutes. The precipitated
product was stripped two times from diethyl ether and the
20 crude hydrochloride salt was used in subsequent
reactions.

Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3Smethylpentanamide

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3Smethylpentanamide • hydrochloride salt (3.62g, 6.77 mmol) was dissolved in 45 mL of methylene chloride and to this was added 1.3g (10.15 mmol) of N,N-diisopropylethyl amine to neutrallize the salt, and another 0.923 g (7.10 mmol) of diisopropylethyl amine followed by 1.22g (7.11 mmol) 10 of chloroacetic anhydride. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The contents were concentrated on a rotory evaporator and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with 5% citric acid and then saturated 15 sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated to yield 4.12 g of crude product. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate hexane yielded 3.5 g (85% yield) of N-{2Rhydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-20 methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide, as a white solid; mass spectrum m/z=616 (M+Li).

Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyl]amino]-3Smethylpentanamide

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide (5.18 g, 8.49 mmol) was dissoved in 15 mL of tetrahydofuran and to this was added 0.5 mL of water followed by 3.62 g (50.9 mmol) of pyrrolidine and the reaction stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvents were removed by rotory evaporation and 10 replaced with ethyl acetate. The solution was washed successively with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 5.6 grams of crude product. Purification by silica gel flash chromatograpy using an eluant of 1-3% methanol 15 in dichloromethane yielded 3.8 grams of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1yl)acetyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide as a white solid.

20 EXAMPLE 39

Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyllaminol-3-

25 methylbutaneamide

Part A: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methylbutaneamide

A 250 mL round bottom flask equipped with magnetic stir 10 bar was charged with N-Cbz-L-Valine (4.22 g, 16.8 mmol) in 20 mL DMF. The solution was cooled to 0°C and charged with HoBt (2.96, 21.9 mmol) and EDC (3.22 g, 16.8 mmol) and stirred 1 hour. The reaction was then charged with N-methylmorpholine (1.7 g, 16.8 mmol), 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-15 1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (7.55 g, 14.6 mmol) in 30 mL of DMF. The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature then concentrated in vacuo and partioned between ethyl acetate and 5% Citric acid. The combined 20 organic layers were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration in vacuo yielded 10 g crude product. Purification by Prep HPLC (20-40% ethyl acetate/hexane) yielded 5.8 g (61 %) of the desired compound.

Part B: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methylbutaneamide

A 300 mL Fisher-Porter vessel equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methylbutaneamide (5.8 g), 2.3 g of 10% Pd-C in 75 mL tetrahydrofuran. The reaction was charged with 50 psi H₂ and hydrogenated overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered thru Celite and concentrated in vacuo to yield 4.4 g of white foam that was used in subsequent reactions without furthur purification.

Part C: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-15 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3methylbutaneamide

A 250 mL round bottom flask equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with crude N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methylbutaneamide (4.35 g) in 60 mL CH2Cl2. The reaction was charged with 1.19 g disopropylamine followed by 1.5 g of chloroacetic anhydride and stirred until TLC indicated no remaining

starting material (about 1.5 hours). The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partioned between ethyl acetate and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration in vacuo yielded 5.17 g of desired product that was used in subsequent reactions without furthur purification.

Part D: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-10 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3-methylbutaneamide

15

A 250 mL round bottom flask equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with crude N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-20 methylbutaneamide (4.99 g) and 3.57 g pyrrolidine in 20 mL tetrahydrofuran and 0.5 mL H₂O. After 45 minutes at room temperature, TLC analysis indicated complete reaction. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partioned between ethyl acetate and saturated sodium 25 bicarbonate. The combined organic layers were washed with brine and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration in vacuo yielded 5.2 g crude product. Purification by Prep HPLC (3 % MeOH/ 57 % ethyl acetate/40 % hexane) gave 4.3 g pure N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-30 yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3methylbutaneamide.

EXAMPLE 40

- Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl) sulfonyl] (2-methylpropyl) aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyll-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3-methylbutaneamide
- To a solution of 2.4 g N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methylbutaneamide in 65 mL THF was added 0.68 mL (2.0 eq.) of pyrrolidine and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The combined organics were washed with brine, dried, and concentrated in vacuo to a white foam. Trituration with diethyl ether yielded 1.0 g product (98 % pure by HPLC).

EXAMPLE 41

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

- 5 Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S (phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(phenylmethoxy)
 carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide
- A solution of 6.0 grams (22.6 mmol) of N-CBZ-L-isoleucine in 45 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C and charged with 4.0 grams (29.5 mmol) of HOBT and 4.3 grams (22.6 mmol) of EDC. The ice bath was removed after 20 minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 minutes.
- The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 7.4 grams (19.7 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine and 2.3 grams (22.6 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents
- were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and
- brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 13 grams of crude material. The crude material was crystallized in ethanol. The solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with one 50 mL portion of hexane, and air-dried to yield
- 30 10.3 grams (84%) of the desired product, m/e = 630 (M+Li).
 - Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide

A Fischer-Porter bottle equipped with a magnetic stir bar was charged with 10.2 grams (16.4 mmol) of the product from Part A and 75 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF). The solution was hydrogenated in the presence of 4 grams of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst (50% water by weight) under 50 psig of hydrogen for 3 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvents removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 300 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 7.4 grams of the desired product, m/e = 490 (M+H).

Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 3.4 grams (20.2 mmol) of pyrrolidineacetic 20 acid hydrochloride in 45 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C and charged with 3.1 grams (22.7 mmol) of HOBT and 3.3 grams (17.4 mmol) of EDC. The ice bath was removed after 20 minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 minutes. The reaction solution was then 25 charged with a solution of 7.4 grams (16.5 mmol) of the amine from Part B and 4.1 grams (40.4 mmol) of 4methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 17 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate 30. and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 8.7 grams of crude material. The coupling reaction was run again using 2.3 grams (13.9 mmol) of

pyrrolidinylacetic acid hydrochloride, 2.1 grams (15.5 mmol) of HOBT, 2.3 grams (12.0 mmol) of EDC, 2.8 grams (27.3 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine, and the 8.7 grams of crude product in place of the amine from Part B. The reaction work-up was repeated and yielded 8.3 grams of crude product. Purification was accomplished using a Prep 2000 chromatograph on silica gel using 40-70% (5% methanol/95% ethyl acetate)/hexane and yielded 5.2 grams (57%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 607 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 42

Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide.hydrochloride salt

20

Part A: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)propaneamide

25

N-t-Boc-S-methyl-(L)-cysteine (2.80 g, 11.9 mmol), 1-

Hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (1.92 g, 12.5 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (2.27 g, 11.9 mmol) were mixed in N,N-dimethylformamide (30.0 mL) at 0°C for 10 min. N-Methylmorpholine (3.03 g, 33.0 mmol) was added and the solution stirred an additional 10 min at 0°C. 2R-Hydroxy-3-[[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (5.00 g, 11.9 mmol) was added and the solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured 10 into ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid (3 X 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 X 100 mL) and brine (2 X 100 mL). organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and 15 percolated through a bed of silica gel (50 g). desired product (7.13 g, 11.19 mmol, 93% yield) was obtained as a white solid by removal of the solvent at reduced pressure; m/e calcd 637; found (M + Li) 644.

Part B: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)propaneamide (7.10 g, 11.1 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (150 mL). A solution of oxone® (20.8 g, 33.9 mmol) in water (150 mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature over 1.5 hours. The

15

solution became cloudy and a precipitate formed during the addition. The reaction was stirred for an additional 1 hour and tetrahydrofuran (200 mL) was added. After an additional 1 hour of mixing the solution was poured into ethyl acetate (1000 mL) and washed with water (3 x 200 mL) followed by brine (2 x 300 ml). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed at reduced pressure. The desired product (5.75 g, 8.86 mmol, 79% yield) was obtained as an off white solid; m/e calcd 669; found (M+H) 670.

Part C: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide•hydrochloride salt

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)

20 propaneamide (5.5 g, 8.20 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100 mL) at room temperature. Anhydrous hydrochloric acid was bubbled through the solution for 15 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and the solvent was removed at reduced pressure.

25 The desired product (4.91 g, 8.10 mmol, 99 % yield) was obtained as a white solid; m/e calcd 569; found (M+Li) 576.

Part D: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-30 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-

(methylsulfonyl) propaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide hydrochloride salt (4.00 g, 6.59 mmole) was mixed at room temperature in acetonitrile (40 mL). Triethylamine (2.10 g, 21.0 mmol) and chloroacetic anhydride (1.12 g, 6.59 mmol) were added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours 10 and poured into ethyl acetate (250 mL). The solution was washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid (2 x 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 \times 100 mL), and brine (2 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed at reduced 15 The product (1.20 g, 1.85 mmol, 28% yield) was obtained as a white solid by crystallization from ethyl acetate and hexanes; m/e calcd 645; found (M+Li) 652.

Part E: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-20 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-

[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide (1.2 g, 1.85 mmol) and pyrrolidine (0.79 g, 11.14 mmol) were mixed together in tetrahydrofuran (12.0 mL) at room temperature for 5 hours. The solvent was removed at reduced pressure and the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate (150 mL). The solution was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 x 100 mL), saturated ammonium chloride (1 x 100 mL), and finally saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed at reduced pressure. A white foam was collected. The product (653 mg, 0.95 mmol, 52% yield) was obtained as a white solid; m/e calcd 680; found (M+Li) 687.

- Part F: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]
 amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide•hydrochloride salt
- N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl] amino]-3(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide (300 mg, 0.44 mmol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (15.0 mL). Concentrated

 25 aqueous hydrochloric acid (100 uL, 1.2 mmol) was added and the solvent was removed at reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in acetonitrile (30 mL) and solvent removed at reduced pressure.

 30 The agreeus column transferent was removed to make the make the
- The aqueous solvent treatment was repeated two more times. The resulting white foam was dried for 16 hours at reduced pressure (0.5 mm Hg) at room temperature and the further dried over phosphorous pentoxide at reduced pressure (0.5 mm Hg) for 72 hours. The hydrochloric acid salt (313 mg, 0.44 mmol) was obtained as a white foam;
- salt (313 mg, 0.44 mmol) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 680; found (M+Li) 687.

EXAMPLE 43

Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)]
sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3-methyl-3(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide.hydrochloride salt

Part A: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,310 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]
amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylthio)butaneamide

The N-t-boc-S-methyl-L-penicillamine dicyclohexylamine

salt (4.00g, 9.00 mmol), 1-Hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate
(1.69 g, 11.00 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.71 g, 9.00 mmol) were
mixed in dimethylformamide (60.0 mL) at room temperature.
The heterogeneous mixture was stirred for 1 hour and 2Rhydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (3.78 g,
9.00 mmol) was added and the heterogenous mixture was
stirred for 16 hours. The solution was poured into ethyl
acetate (600 mL) and washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid
(2 x 300 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x

300 mL) and brine (300 mL). The solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The desired product was purified by flash chromatography (0-80% ethyl acetate/hexanes on silica gel). The product (5.21 g, 7.83 mmol, 87% yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 665; found (M+Li) 672.

Part B: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]

amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-15 dimethylethoxy)carbonyl] amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylthio)butaneamide (5.01 g, 7.53 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (250 mL). A solution of oxone® (13.8 g, 22.6 mmol) in water (250 mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature over 2 hours. The solution 20 became cloudy and a precipitate formed during the addition. The solution was poured into ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with water (3 \times 200 mL) followed by brine (2 \times 300 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed in vacuo. 25 The product (4.72 g, 6.77 mmol, 89% yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 697; found (M+Li) 704.

Part C: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methyl-3(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide•hydrochloride salt

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl] amino]-3-methyl-3
[methylsulfonyl)butaneamide (4.51 g, 6.46 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) at room temperature. Anhydrous hydrochloric acid was bubbled through the solution for 30 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The product (4.02 g, 6.35 mmol, 99% yield) was obtained as a white solid; m/e calcd 697; found (M+Li) 704.

Part D: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-15 benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-20 methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide•hydrochloride salt (3.90 g, 6.15 mmole) was mixed at room temperature in acetonitrile (40 mL). Triethylamine (1.86 g, 18.45 mmol) and chloroacetic anhydride (1.05 g, 6.15 mmol) were

added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and poured into ethyl acetate (250 mL). The solution was washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid (2 x 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 100 mL), and brine (2 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent was removed in vacuo. A yellow oil (4.3 g) was obtained and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 50-75% ethyl acetates in hexanes. The product (2.15 g, 3,18 mmol, 52% Yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 674; found (M+Li) 681.

Part E: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]
amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)
butaneamide (2.06 g, 3.05 mmol) and pyrrolidine (2.16 g, 30.5 mmol) were mixed together in tetrahydrofuran (30.0 mL) at room temperature for 3 hours. The solvent was removed at reduced pressure. A light yellow oil was obtained which was dissolved in methanol (20 mL) and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The product (2.09 g, 2.95 mmol, 96% yield) was obtained as a yellow foam; m/e calcd 708; found (M+H) 709.

30 Part F: Preparation of N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-

(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]
amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)
butaneamide.hydrochloride salt

N-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3-methyl-3-(methyl sulfonyl)butaneamide (300 mg, 0.42 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (10 mL). Anhydrous hydrochloric acid was added for 1 min and the dichloromethane solution was reduced to a volume of about 2 mL. The solution was added dropwise to hexanes (50 mL) and the product precipitated. The desired salt (295 mg, 0.40 mmol) was collected in a buchner funnel by vacuum filtration as a yellow solid; m/e calcd 708; found (M+H) 709.

EXAMPLE 44

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)]

20 carbonyll(2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyll
2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3,3
dimethylbutanamide

25

Part A: Preparation of N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-[N 1 -(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine

15

A solution of N-[3S-[N¹-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (18.5 g, 50 mmol), BOC-ON (12.35 g, 50 mmol) and triethylamine (7 mL) in tetrahydrofuran (400 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (1 L) and washed with sodium hydroxide (5 %, 2 X 200 mL) and brine, dried (MgSO4) and then concentrated in vacuo to afford 23.5 g (quantitative yield) of the pure desired product.

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4phenylbutylamine in ethanol was hydrogenated at 45 psig

of hydrogen in the presence of 5% pd(C) catalyst to yield
N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4phenylbutylamine.

Following standard workup, the crude amine (12.24 g, 36.42 mmol) was added to a mixture of N-carbobenzyloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine (9.67 g, 36.42 mmol), HOBT (4.92 g, 36.42 mmol) and EDC (6.98 g, 36.42 mmol) in DMF (300 mL) after the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The mixture was stirring for an additional 18 hours. The DMF was removed in vacuo, the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL), washed with sodium hydroxide (5%, 2 x 200 mL) and brine (200 mL), dried and concentrated to afford 21 g (quantitative) of the desired product.

Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

$$H_2N$$
 N
 OH
 OH
 OH

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (20 g, 34.29 mmol) in methanol (250 mL) was hydrogenated at room temperature in the presence of Pd/C (10%, 5 g). The

catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to afford 13.8 g (90%) of the pure desired

product.

Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

To N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino3,3-dimethylbutanamide (12.45 g, 27.70 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) was added chloroacetic anhydride (5.21 g, 30.48 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with citric acid (5%, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 mL) and brine, dried (MgSO4) and concentrated to afford 12.0 g (82%) of the pure desired product.

Part E: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A mixture of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[((1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (10.42 g, 19.82 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) was cooled to 0°C, and pyrrolidine (7.1 g, 100 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (500 mL), washed with sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 200 mL) and brine (200 mL), dried (MgSO4) and concentrated to afford 11.0 g (quantitative) of the

desired product.

EXAMPLE 45

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[phenylsulfonyl]](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

10

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2 g, 3.57 mmol) in Dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) was stirred 15 for 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed and the residue was dried in vacuo. The residue was stirred in ethyl acetate (50 mL) then benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.692 g, 3.57 mmol) was added followed by triethylamine (1.587 g, 15.71 mmol) and the mixture was 20 stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO4), and concentrated. residue was chromatographed in ethyl acetate to afford 25 1.0 g (47%) of the desired product as a white powder; m/e=601 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 45A

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[1,3-benzodioxole-5-30 sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl)-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3,3dimethylbutanamide

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
(2 g, 3.57 mmol) in Dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) was stirred
for 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed
and the residue was dried in vacuo to produce the amine

The residue is stirred in ethyl acetate then 1,3benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride from Example 32 is added
followed by triethylamine and the mixture is stirred at
room temperature. The reaction mixture is diluted with
ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate
(saturated) and brine, dried (MgSO4) and concentrated.
The solvent is removed and the product is chromatographed
if desired.

EXAMPLE 46

20

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-methoxyphenyl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyllamino]-3.3dimethylbutanamide

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-5 [[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2 g, 3.57 mmol) in Dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed and the residue was dried in vacuo. The residue was stirred in ethyl acetate (50 mL) then 4-methoxybenzene sulfonyl chloride (0.737 g, 3.57 mmol) was added followed by triethylamine (1.587 g, 15.71 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 15 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO4), and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed in ethyl acetate to afford 1.0 g (44%) of the desired product as a white powder; m/e=631(M+H).

20

EXAMPLE 47

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2.3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-vl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyll-2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyl]aminol-3.3-

25 <u>dimethylbutanamide</u>

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-5 [[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2 g, 3.57 mmol) in Dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed and the residue was dried in vacuo. The residue was stirred in ethyl acetate (50 mL) then 2,3-dihydro benzofuran-5-ylsulfonyl chloride (0.737 g, 3.57 mmol) was 10 added followed by triethylamine (1.587 g, 15.71 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO4), and 15 concentrated. The residue was chromatographed in ethyl acetate to afford the desired product as a white powder.

EXAMPLE 48

20

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1.4-benzodioxan-6-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

To a solution of the N-[3S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl) amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (0.5 g, 1.35 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5.0 mL) containing Et₃N . 5 (0.35 mL, 2.5 mmol) was added 1,4-benzodioxan-6-sulfonyl chloride (0.34 g, 1.45 mmol) and stirred at 0°C for 30 min. After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was diluted with CH2Cl2 (20 mL), washed with cold 1N HCl (3 \times 20 mL), water (2 \times 20 mL), satd. 10 NaHCO3 (2 \times 20 mL) and water (3 \times 20 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography using 35% EtOAc in hexane to give the desired product as a white amorphous solid which crystallized from MeOH as a white 15 powder (0.65g. 84% yield): m.p. 82-84° C, HRMS-FAB: calcd for C30H37N2O7S 569.2321 (MH+), found 569.2323.

EXAMPLE 49

20

Preparation of 2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyllamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methylpent-4-ynamide

25

Part A Preparation of 2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]pent-4-ynamide

To a cooled solution of N-t-Boc-L-propargyl glycine (5.0 g, 23.4 mmol) and 4.7g (1.5 equiv.) of N-hydroxy benzotriazole in 40 mL of N, N-dimethylformamide was added 4.6g (23.4 mmol) of EDC and stirred at 0 C for one hour. To this was added a solution of 12.10g (23.4 mmol) of 2Rhydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine in 6 mL of N, N-dimethylformamide and the solution stirred for 16 10 The solvent was removed by rotory evaporation, replaced with ehtyl acetate, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, 5% citric acid and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 13.3 grams of crude product, which was crystallized from diethyl ether: ethyl acetate to 15 yield 6.9g of 2S-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide.

Part B. Preparation of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide

5.0g (8.12 mmol) of the product from Part A. was

dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 30 minutes. The precipitated product was stripped two times from diethyl ether and this crude hydrochloride salt was used in Part C.

5

Part C. Preparation of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide

4.4g (8.12 mmol) of amine hydrochloride from Part B was dissolved in 60 mL of methylene chloride and to this was added 3.0g (24 mmol) of N,N-diisopropylethyl amine, followed by 1.38g (8.1 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride. The solution was stirred at room temperature overnight.

The contents were concentrated on a rotory evaporator and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with 5% citric acid and then saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated to yield 4.3g of crude product.

Recrystallization from ethyl acetate hexane yielded 3.6 g (75% yield) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-

1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide as a white solid.

25

Part D. Preparation of 2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide

2S-[(Chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-15-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide (3.5 g, 6.0 mmol) was dissoved in 30 mL of tetrahydofuran and to this was added 2.3 g (5 equiv.) of pyrrolidine and the reaction stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvents were removed by rotory evaporation and replaced with ethyl acetate. organics were washed successively with saturated sodium 10 bicarbonate, and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated to yield 3.4 grams of crude product. Purification by crystallization from diethyl ether yielded 3.0 grams of 2S-[[(pyrrolidino)acetyl] amino] -N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl] 15 (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4ynamide as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 50

20 <u>Preparation of 5-chlorosulfonyl-2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole</u>

A solution of 2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole (5.0 g, 0.026 mole) in chlorosulfonic acid (35.00 mL) was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 3 hours. The resulting dark colored reaction mixture was poured into an ice-water mixture (200 mL), and stirred at

room temperature for 30 minutes. The resulting precipitate was filtered and washed with cold water (500 mL). The solid was dried overnight under high vacuum in a desiccator over NaOH pellets to give 5-chlorosulfonyl-2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole (5.9 g, 78%) as a grey powder. 1 H NMR (DMSO- d_6) d: 3.89 (s, 3H), 7.55 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.88 (s, 1H). (German Patent DE 3826036)

10

EXAMPLE 51

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N^1 -[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-vl)sulfonvl]- N^1 -(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

15

20

25

30

To a cold solution of N-[3S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl) amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (5.0 g, 13.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (70 mL) was added triethylamine (5.95 g, 54.0 mmol) followed by the addition of 5-chlorosulfonyl-2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazole (4.29 g, 14.85 mmol) in small portions as a solid. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 2.5 hours when reaction of the amino alcohol was complete. The mixture was cooled and filtered, and the filtrate was' concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc (200mL), washed successively with cold 5% citric acid (3 \times 50 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 \times 50 mL) and water (3 \times 100 mL), then dried (Na₂SO₄), concentrated and dried under vacuum. The residue was triturated with methanol, cooled, filtered, washed with

MeOH-EtOAc (1:1, v/v) and dried in a desiccator to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (6.02 g, 72 %) as a light brown powder: FABMS: m/z = 630 (M+Li); HRMS: calcd. for C31H38N5O7S (M+H) 624.2492, found 624.2488.

EXAMPLE 52

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methyl-propyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine

15 A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl] (2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (0.36 g, 0.58 mmol) in 2.5 N methanolic KOH (2.00 mL) was heated at 70°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 3 hours. 20 The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 15 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na2SO4) and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-90% CH3CN/H2O gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The appropriate 25 fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure 2Rhydroxy-3-[[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenyl-methyl)propylamine (0.22 g, 58%) as a white powder: FAB-MS m/z = 432 (M+H); HRMS: 30 calcd. for C₂₁H₃₀N₅O₃S (M+H) 432.2069, found 432.2071.

EXAMPLE 53

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)
propyllcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

To a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl-propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine (0.22 g, 0.33 mmol) in THF (3.00 mL), 10 triethylamine (0.11 g, 1.1 mmol) and benzyloxycarbonyl succinimide (0.09 g, 0.36 mmol) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The solution was concentrated, and the residue 15 was partitioned between EtOAc (15 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic phase was washed with brine, dried (Na2SO4), and concentrated. resulting residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-90% CH3CN/H2O gradient (30 min) at a flow rate 20 of 70 mL/min. The appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-aminobenzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (0.12 g, 61%) as a white powder: FAB-MS m/z = 566 (M+H); 25 HRMS: calcd. for C29H36N5O5S 566.2437 (M+H), found 566.2434.

EXAMPLE 54

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyll(2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazole-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-5 (phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (2.5 g, 0.4 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) and THF (50 mL) was hydrogenated in the presence of 10% Pd/C (1.2 g) at room temperature at 60 psi for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated 10 under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was triturated with ether and filtered. The solid substance thus obtained was washed with ether and dried in vacuo to afford pure 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-15-15 (phenylmethyl)propylamine (1.5 g, 77%) as an off white powder: $R_t = 12.8 \text{ min}$; FAB-MS m/z = 490 (M+H); HRMS: calcd. for C23H32N5O5S 490.2124 (M+H), found 490.2142.

EXAMPLE 55

20

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3.3-dimethylbutanamide

25

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N^1 -[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]- N^1 -(2-

methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxy-carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

To a solution of N-carbobenzyloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine (0.65 g, 2.45 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added HOBt (0.5 g, 3.22 mmol) and EDC (0.49 g, 2.55 mmol), and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. Then a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine (1.2 g, 2.45 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) and N-methyl

- propylamine (1.2 g, 2.45 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) and N-methyl morpholine (0.74 g, 7.3 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The DMF was then distilled away in vacuo, and the remaining residue was partitioned between cold 1N aqueous HCl (100
- mL) and EtOAc (200 mL). The organic phase was washed successively with cold 1N HCl (2 x 50 mL), brine (2 x 50 mL), 0.25 N NaOH (3 x 50 mL), brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using
- 20 EtOAc as the eluent to afford 1.5 g (83%) of pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxy-carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethyl butanamide: Rt = 21.2 min; FAB-MS m/z = 737 (M+H), HRMS:
- 25 calcd. for C37H49N6O8S 737.3333 (M+H), found 737.3334.

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-

benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (4.0 g, 5.4 mmol) in MeOH (15 mL) and THF (65 mL) was hydrogenated in the presence of 10% Pd/C (2.0 g) at room temperature at 50 psi for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was triturated with ether and filtered. The solid residue was washed with ether and dried in vacuo to 10 afford N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2.9 g, 88%) as a pale yellow powder. A portion of the material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-15 90% CH3CN/H2O gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 The appropriate fractions were combined and mL/min. freeze dried to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-amino-3,3-20 dimethylbutanamide as a white powder: Rt = 13.9 min; FAB-MS $m/z = 609 (M+Li) \cdot 603 (M+H)$; HRMS: calcd. for C29H43N6O6S 603.2965 (M+H), found 603.2972.

EXAMPLE 56

25

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[N]-(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyll-N]-(2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyll-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3.3-dimethylbutanamide

30

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxy

amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A mixture of chloroacetic acid (0.32 g, 3.39 mmol), HOBt (0.78 g, 5.0 mmol), and EDC (0.65 g, 3.39 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour, and was then added to a solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2.0 g, 3.3 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). The resulting mixture

was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours, and at room temperature for 1 hour when the reaction was complete. The DMF was removed in vacuo. The resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc (50 mL) and washed successively with saturated

aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 x 25 mL), brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting material was crystallized from EtOAc to give 1.2 g (53%) of pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxy amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-

1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide as a white powder: m.p. 253°C (decomp); R_t 18.1 min; FAB-MS m/z = 679 (M+H), HRMS: calcd. for $C_{31}H_{4}N_{6}O_{7}SC1$ 679.2681 (M+H), found 679.2690.

Part B. Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide.

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-15-(phenylmethyl)

25

30

20

propy1]-2S-[(chloroacety1)amino]-3,3-dimethy1butanamide (0.5 g, 0.74 mmol) was dissoved in THF (2.00 mL), pyrrolidine (0.3 g, 4.2 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dried in vacuo. The resulting material was triturated with 10% EtOAc in ether and filtered. The solid was washed with ether and dried to give 0.42 g of crude product as a pale yellow powder. 10 This was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 5-70% CH3CN/H2O gradient-(30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-carbomethoxyaminobenzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl] (2-methylpropyl) amino]-15-15 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-25-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl] amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (0.41 g, 77%) as a white powder: $R_t = 14.8 \text{ min}$; FAB-MS m/z = 714 (M+H), HRMS: calcd. for C35H52N7O7S 714.3649 (M+H), found 714.3666.

20 EXAMPLE 57

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)]
sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]aminol-3,3-dimethyl

25 <u>butanamide•dihydrochloride</u>

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl) acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•dihydrochloride

A solution of hydrochloric acid in dioxane (4N, 10 mL) was added to N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)-carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2.80 g, 5.0 mmol), and the mixture was stirrred for 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed, and the residue was dried in vacuo to afford 2.60 g of the desired dihydrochloride product as a crystalline solid.

10

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•dihydrochloride

15

To a solution of 6-chlorosulfonylbenzothiazole in dichloromethane (100 mL) was added N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)-propyl]-2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•

- dihydrochloride (1.00 g, 1.875 mmol) and neat triethylamine (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 18 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (100 mL), washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried
- 25 (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel, eluting with 5% methanol in ethyl acetate to afford pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-
- 30 25-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-3,3-dimethyl butanamide (0.180 g, 15%). This was converted to the dihydrochloride salt by concentrating an acetonitrile

solution with 1N HCl (2 mL). The residue was then dried to afford the desired dihydrochloride salt: FAB-MS $C_{33H47N505S2}$: m/z = 657.

5

EXAMPLE 58

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)] sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)aminol-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

10

Part A: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester

15

A mixture of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine 3.7 g (9.45 mmol) and BOC-ON (2.33 g, 9.45 mmol) and triethylamine (0.954 g, 9.45 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (60 mL) was stirred for 16 h and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL), washed with sodium hydroxide (1N, 100 mL), citric acid (5%, 100 mL), dried (MgSO4), and concentrated to afford 1.18 g (94%) of the desired product as a white solid.

25

20

Part B: Preparation of [2R-Hydroxy-3-[(2-aminobenzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-

(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester

The [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2methylpropyl)]amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylcarbamic acid 5 t-butyl ester 1.12 g (2.279 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (4.48 g) and potassium thiocyanate (5.60 g) followed by dry methanol (35 mL) and the rsulting black-brown suspension was heated at reflux for 2h. The reaction mixture turned grey. 10 reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (50 mL) and heated at reflux. Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. filtrate upon concentration afforded a rseidue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:methanol 90:10) to afford 15 0.80 g (78%) of the deprotected compound as a solid. was directly reprotected via the following procedure; (2.25 g, 5.005 mmol) BOC-ON (1.24 g), and triethylamine (0.505 g, 5.005 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 18h. The reaction mixture 20 was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) and was washed with sodium hydroxide (1N, 100 mL), citric acid (5%, 100 mL) dried (Mg SO4) and concentrated to afford a residue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate: hexane 3:1) to afford 1.8 q 25 (65%) of the desired product as a solid.

Part C: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester

The product of part B above (1.80 g, 3.2755 mmol) was added to a solution of isoamylnitrite (0.88 mL) in dioxane (20 mL) and the mixture was heated at 85° C.

- After the cessation of evolution of nitrogen, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate 1:1) to afford 1.25 g (78%) of the desired product as a solid.
- 10 Part D: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine•hydrochloride

The product of part C above was deprotected via the

15 following procedure; (1.25 g, 2.3385 mmol) was added
dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) and was stirred at room
temperature for 2h and concentrated. Excess HCl was
chased with toluene to afford 1.0 g (quantitative yield)
of the desired product as its HCl salt.

20

Part E: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[[(N-benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3,3-dimethyl butanamide

A mixture of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-t-butylglycine (2.0 g, 7.538 mmol), HOBT (1.02 g, 7.55 mmol), and EDC (1.45 g, 7.55 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Then [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl). propylamine hydrochloride (3.825 g, 7.54 mmol) and Nmethylmorpholine (3.80 g) were added and the stirring continued for 18 hours. The DMF was removed in vacuo, 10 the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL), and washed with citric acid (1N, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (100 mL), brine (200 mL), dried, filtered, and concentrated to afford 4.69 g (91%) of pure N-[2Rhydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[N-(phenylmethoxy 15 carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide.

Part F: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-(amino)-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•dihydrobromide

A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[N-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethyl butanamide (4.69 g, 6.89 mmol) in dichloroethane (200 mL) was treated with HBr (48% in acetic acid, 7.1 mL), and the reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room

temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was washed with diethyl ether several times to afford 4.88 g of the desired dihydrobromide product as a powder: high resolution FAB-MS Calcd for C27H38N4O4S2: 547.2413, found: 547.2429 (M+H).

Part G: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

10

A mixture of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-(amino)-3,3-dimethylbutanamide dihydrobromide (3.5 g, 4.9388 mmol), chloroacetic anhydride (0.929 g, 5.44 mmol) and triethylamine (1.097 g, 10.86 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with citric acid (1N, 30 mL), sodium bicarbonate (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried, filtered and concentrated to afford 3.0 g of the desired product.

EXAMPLE 59

Following the procedures of the previous Examples, the compounds set forth in Tables 2 through 19 can be prepared.

TABLE 2

Entry	R3	R4	
1	isobutyl	4-aminophenyl	
2	isobutyl	3-aminophenyl	
3 .	cyclopentylmethyl	phenyl	
4	cyclohexylmethyl	phenyl	
5	cyclopentylmethyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl	
6	cyclohexylmethyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl	
7	cyclopentylmethyl	benzofuran-5-yl	
8	cyclohexylmethyl	benzofuran-5-yl	
9	cyclopentylmethyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl	
10	cyclohexylmethyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl	
11	isobutyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl	
12	isobutyl	benzofuran-5-yl	
13	isobutyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl	
14	isobutyl .	1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl	
15	isoamyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl	
16 .	isoamyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl	
17	isoamyl	1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl	
18	isobutyl	benzothiazol-6-yl	
19	isobutyl	2-amino-benzothiazol-6-yl	
20	isobutyl	benzoxazol-5-yl	
21	cyclopentylmethyl	4-methoxyphenyl	
22	cyclohexylmethyl	4-methoxyphenyl	
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21	isobutyl isobutyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclohexylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl isobutyl isobutyl isobutyl isobutyl isoamyl isoamyl isoamyl isoamyl isobutyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl cyclopentylmethyl	

TABLE 3A

TABLE 3B

148

TABLE 4A

5 Entry R²

(CH₃)₂CHCH₂- (4-FC₆H₅)CH₂
CH₃CH₂CH₂- (naphth-2-y1)CH₂
CH₃SCH₂CH₂- C₆H₁CH₂
C₆H₅CH₂- C₆H₅SCH₂
10 (4-CH₃OC₆H₅)CH₂- (naphth-2-y1)SCH₂-

TABLE 4B

R1 R2 R2 (CH₃)₂CHCH₂- (4-FC₆H₅)CH₂- (10 CH₃CH₂CH₂CH₂- (10 CH₃CH₂CH₂- (10 CH₃CH₂CH₂- (10 CH₃CH₂- (10 CH₃C

TABLE 5A

-CH₂CH₂CH₃ -CH₂CH(CH₃)₂ -CH₂CH₂CH(CH₃)₂

TABLE 5B

10

Entry	_R 3	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	7 : /	 ገ
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃		
-CH ₂ CH (CH ₃) ₂		\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂		_/

TABLE 6

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& &$$

TABLE 7A

Rntry

TABLE 7B

5 Entry R4

TABLE 7C

5 Entry R⁴

TABLE 7D

5 Entry

R4

TABLE 7E

R4 Entry - NHCO2CH3 у инсо₂сн₃

TABLE 7F

5 Entry

R 4

TABLE 8

TABLE 9

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
& & \\
&$$

TABLE 10A

TABLE 10B

TABLE 10C

TABLE 10D

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
& & & \\
& & & \\
N & & & \\
N & & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\$$

TABLE 10E

TABLE 10F

TABLE 11A

5 Entry

R4

TABLE 11B

5 Entry

R⁴

TABLE 11C

5 Entry

R⁴

TABLE 11D

5 Entry

R4

TABLE 11E

5 Entry

R⁴

170

TABLE 11F

Entry

 R^4

TABLE 12A

TABLE 12B

TABLE 13A

TABLE 13B

TABLE 14A

TABLE 14B

TABLE 15

TABLE 16A

TABLE 16B

TABLE 17A

5 Entry R² $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2 - (4-FC_6H_5)CH_2 - CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2 - (naphth-2-y1)CH_2 - CH_3SCH_2CH_2 - C_6H_1CH_2 - C_6H_5CH_2 - C_6H_5SCH_2 - C_6H_5CH_2 - (naphth-2-y1)SCH_2 - (naphth-2-y1)SCH_2$

TABLE 17B

15

Entry	R	2
	(CH ₃) ₂ CHCH ₂ -	(4-FC ₆ H ₅)CH ₂ -
	CH3CH2CH2CH2-	$(naphth-2-y1)CH_2-$
20.	CH3SCH2CH2-	C ₆ H ₁₁ CH ₂ -
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ -	C ₆ H ₅ SCH ₂ -
	$(4-CH_3OC_6H_5)CH_2-$	(naphth-2-yl)SCH ₂ -

TABLE 18A

Entry R3 -CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₃ -CH₂CH (CH₃)₂ -CH₂CH₂CH (CH₃)₂

TABLE 18B

10

Entry	R ³		
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	\sim	` ^	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃			
-CH2CH(CH3)2		`	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂			

TABLE 19

5	Entry	_R 1
		H H H
		CH ₃ S CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ S
	H ₂ N	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$

EXAMPLE 60

10

15

20

The compounds of the present invention are effective HIV protease inhibitors. Utilizing an enzyme assay as described below, the compounds set forth in the examples herein disclosed inhibited the HIV enzyme. The preferred compounds of the present invention and their calculated IC50 (inhibiting concentration 50%, i.e., the concentration at which the inhibitor compound reduces enzyme activity by 50%) values are shown in Tables 20 and 21. The enzyme method is described below. The substrate is 2-Ile-Nle-Phe(p-NO₂)-Gln-ArgNH₂. The positive control is MVT-101 (Miller, M. et al, Science, 246, 1149 (1989))

The assay conditions are as follows:

Assay buffer: 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.4

20% glycerol

1 mM EDTA

1 mm DTT

0.1% CHAPS

The above described substrate is dissolved in DMSO, then diluted 10 fold in assay buffer. Final substrate concentration in the assay is 80 µM. HIV protease is diluted in the assay buffer to a final enzyme concentration of 12.3 nanomolar, based on a molecular weight of 10,780.

final concentration of DMSO is 14% and the

final concentration of glycerol is 18%. The test compound
is dissolved in DMSO and diluted in DMSO to 10x the test
concentration; 10µl of the enzyme preparation is added,
the materials mixed and then the mixture is incubated at
ambient temperature for 15 minutes. The enzyme reaction
is initiated by the addition of 40µl of substrate. The
increase in fluorescence is monitored at 4 time points (0,
8, 16 and 24 minutes) at ambient temperature. Each assay
is carried out in duplicate wells.

The preceding examples can be repeated with similar success by substituting the generically or specifically described reactants and/or operating conditions of this invention for those used in the preceding examples.

184

TABLE 20

5	Entry	Compound	IC50(nM)
		H O O O	
	1 \(\)	O H OH S	4
		ή ο ο ο ο	*
	2 \bigcirc N	N OH N S	
			2
	3 \(\sigma_N^2\)	N OH N S	
	•		2

10

15

20

EXAMPLE 61

The effectiveness of various compounds were determined in the above-described enzyme assay and in a CEM cell assay. The HIV inhibition assay method of acutely infected cells is an automated tetrazolium based colorimetric assay essentially that reported by Pauwles et al, <u>J. Virol. Methods</u>, <u>20</u>, 309-321 (1988). Assays were performed in 96-well tissue culture plates. CEM cells, a CD4+ cell line, were grown in RPMI-1640 medium

(Gibco) supplemented with a 10% fetal calf serum and were then treated with polybrene $(2\mu g/ml)$. An 80 μl volume of medium containing 1×10^4 cells was dispensed into each well of the tissue culture plate. To each well was added a 100µl volume of test compound dissolved in tissue culture medium (or medium without test compound as a control) to achieve the desired final concentration and the cells were incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. A frozen culture of HIV-1 was diluted in culture medium to a concentration of 5 x 10^4 TCID50 per ml (TCID50 = the dose 10 of virus that infects 50% of cells in tissue culture), and a 20µL volume of the virus sample (containing 1000 TCID50 of virus) was added to wells containing test compound and to wells containing only medium (infected 15 control cells). Several wells received culture medium without virus (uninfected control cells). Likewise, the intrinsic toxicity of the test compound was determined by adding medium without virus to several wells containing test compound. In summary, the tissue culture plates 20 contained the following experiments:

		Cells	Drug	Virus
25	1.	+	-	-
	2.	+	+	-
	3.	+	-	· +
	4.	+ .	+	+

In experiments 2 and 4 the final concentrations of test compounds were 1, 10, 100 and 500 μg/ml. Either azidothymidine (AZT) or dideoxyinosine (ddI) was included as a positive drug control. Test compounds were dissolved in DMSO and diluted into tissue culture medium so that the final DMSO concentration did not exceed 1.5% in any case. DMSO was added to all control wells at an appropriate concentration.

3.

1

Following the addition of virus, cells were incubated at 37°C in a humidified, 5% CO2 atmosphere for 7 days. Test compounds could be added on days 0, 2 and 5 if desired. On day 7, post-infection, the cells in each well were resuspended and a 100µl sample of each cell suspension was removed for assay. A 20µL volume of a 5 mg/ml solution of 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-vl)-2,5diphenyltetrazolium bromide (MTT) was added to each 100µL cell suspension, and the cells were incubated for 4 hours 10 at 27°C in a 5% CO2 environment. During this incubation, MTT is metabolically reduced by living cells resulting in the production in the cell of a colored formazan product. To each sample was added 100µl of 10% sodium dodecylsulfate in 0.01 N HCl to lyse the cells, and 15 samples were incubated overnight. The absorbance at 590 nm was determined for each sample using a Molecular Devices microplate reader. Absorbance values for each set of wells is compared to assess viral control infection, uninfected control cell response as well as 20 test compound by cytotoxicity and antiviral efficacy.

TABLE 21

25 Entry Compound IC50 EC50 (nM) (nM)

187

TABLE 21 (cont'd)

Entry	Compound	IC50 (nM)	EC50
			·
	н		
	N N OH N S		e.
2		3	12
	N S		
3	CH ₃ −S=0	8	120
✓ N	N S OH S		·.
4	о ф н он	4	12
		•	12
~~n	H O N S		
	O H OH N	OCH ₃	
5	ı	3	5

188

TABLE 21 (cont'd)

5	Entry Compound	IC50 (nM)	EC50
•			
<i>.</i>		3 y	6
	$ \begin{array}{c c} & H & O & O \\ & N & N & N & N \\ & H & OH & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & N & N & N \\ & N & N & $	2	29
	8	3	16
	N OH OH OCH3		
10	9	3	16

189

TABLE 21 (cont'd)

Entry	Compound	IC50 (nM)	EC50
	но		
✓ N	N N N S		y 1
	CH ₃ S O	0	
0		4	39
	H O O O		
N	N S OH S		
11		oʻ 4	21
		-	
ν η,	W S S	- 0	
	O H OH N	I,	
12	Н	2	11
~ N.	H O O O		
	OH OH N	OCH ₃	
	· .	3	18

The compounds of the present invention are effective antiviral compounds and, in particular, are effective retroviral inhibitors as shown above. Thus, the subject compounds are effective HIV protease inhibitors.

5 It is contemplated that the subject compounds will also inhibit other retroviruses such as other lentiviruses in particular other strains of HIV, e.g. HIV-2, human T-cell leukemia virus, respiratory syncitial virus, simia immunodeficiency virus, feline leukemia virus, feline

10 immuno-deficiency virus, hepadnavirus, cytomegalovirus and picornavirus. Thus, the subject compounds are effective in the treatment, proplylaxis of retroviral infections and/or the prevention of the spread of retroviral infections.

15 The subject compounds are also effective in preventing the growth of retroviruses in a solution. Both human and animal cell cultures, such as T-lymphocyte cultures, are utilized for a variety of well known purposes, such as research and diagnostic procedures 20 including calibrators and controls. Prior to and during the growth and storage of a cell culture, the subject compounds may be added to the cell culture medium at an effective concentration to prevent the unexpected or undesired replication of a retrovirus that may 25 inadvertently, unknowingly or knowingly be present in the cell culture. The virus may be present originally in the cell culture, for example HIV is known to be present in human T-lymphocytes long before it is detectable in blood, or through exposure to the virus. This use of the 30 subject compounds prevents the unknowing or inadvertent. exposure of a potentially lethal retrovirus to a researcher or clinician.

Compounds of the present invention can possess one or more asymmetric carbon atoms and are thus capable of existing in the form of optical isomers as well as in the form of racemic or nonracemic mixtures thereof. The

optical isomers can be obtained by resolution of the racemic mixtures according to conventional processes, for example by formation of diastereoisomeric salts by treatment with an optically active acid or base.

- Examples of appropriate acids are tartaric, diacetyltartaric, dibenzoyltartaric, ditoluoyltartaric and camphorsulfonic acid and then separation of the mixture of diastereoisomers by crystallization followed by liberation of the optically active bases from these
- salts. A different process for separation of optical isomers involves the use of a chiral chromatography column optimally chosen to maximize the separation of the enantiomers. Still another available method involves synthesis of covalent diastereoisomeric molecules by
- reacting compounds of Formula I with an optically pure acid in an activated form or an optically pure isocyanate. The synthesized diastereoisomers can be separated by conventional means such as chromatography, distillation, crystallization or sublimation, and then
- 20 hydrolyzed to deliver the enantiomerically pure compound. The optically active compounds of Formula I can likewise be obtained by utilizing optically active starting materials. These isomers may be in the form of a free acid, a free base, an ester or a salt.

25

30

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from inorganic or organic acids. These salts include but are not limited to the following: acetate, adipate, alginate, citrate, aspartate, benzoate, benzenesulfonate, bisulfate, butyrate, camphorate, camphorsulfonate, digluconate, cyclopentanepropionate, dodecylsulfate, ethanesulfonate,

glucoheptanoate, glycerophosphate, hemisulfate, heptanoate, hexanoate, fumarate, hydrochloride,

35 hydrobromide, hydroiodide, 2-hydroxy-ethanesulfonate, lactate, maleate, methanesulfonate, nicotinate, 2-naphthalenesulfonate, oxalate, palmoate, pectinate,

25

30

persulfate, 3-phenylpropionate, picrate, pivalate, propionate, succinate, tartrate, thiocyanate, tosylate, mesylate and undecanoate. Also, the basic nitrogencontaining groups can be quaternized with such agents as lower alkyl halides, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, and butyl chloride, bromides, and iodides; dialkyl sulfates like dimethyl, diethyl, dibutyl, and diamyl sulfates, long chain halides such as decyl, lauryl, myristyl and stearyl chlorides, bromides and iodides, aralkyl halides like benzyl and phenethyl bromides, and others. Water or oil-soluble or dispersible products are thereby obtained.

Examples of acids which may be employed to form pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts include

15 such inorganic acids as hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid and phosphoric acid and such organic acids as oxalic acid, maleic acid, succinic acid and citric acid. Other examples include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases.

Total daily dose administered to a host in single or divided doses may be in amounts, for example, from 0.001 to 10 mg/kg body weight daily and more usually 0.01 to 1 mg. Dosage unit compositions may contain such amounts of submultiples thereof to make up the daily dose.

The amount of active ingredient that may be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the host treated and the particular mode of administration.

The dosage regimen for treating a disease condition with the compounds and/or compositions of this invention is selected in accordance with a variety of factors, including the type, age, weight, sex, diet and medical condition of the patient, the severity of the

injectables.

disease, the route of administration, pharmacological considerations such as the activity, efficacy, pharmacokinetic and toxicology profiles of the particular compound employed, whether a drug delivery system is utilized and whether the compound is administered as part of a drug combination. Thus, the dosage regimen actually employed may vary widely and therefore may deviate from the preferred dosage regimen set forth above.

10 The compounds of the present invention may be administered orally, parenterally, by inhalation spray, -rectally, or topically in dosage unit formulations containing conventional nontoxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants, and vehicles as desired. 15 Topical administration may also involve the use of transdermal administration such as transdermal patches or iontophoresis devices. The term parenteral as used herein includes subcutaneous injections, intravenous, intramuscular, intrasternal injection, or infusion 20 techniques. Injectable preparations, for example, sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspensions may be formulated according to the known art using suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents. sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile 25 injectable solution or suspension in a nontoxic parenterally acceptable diluent or solvent, for example, as a solution in 1,3-butanediol. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution, and isotonic sodium chloride solution. 30 In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find use in the preparation of

Suppositories for rectal administration of the drug can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable

nonirritating excipient such as cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols which are solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum and release the drug.

5

10

15

20

Solid dosage forms for oral administration may include capsules, tablets, pills, powders, and granules. In such solid dosage forms, the active compound may be admixed with at least one inert diluent such as sucrose lactose or starch. Such dosage forms may also comprise, as in normal practice, additional substances other than inert diluents, e.g., lubricating agents such as magnesium stearate. In the case of capsules, tablets, and pills, the dosage forms may also comprise buffering agents. Tablets and pills can additionally be prepared with enteric coatings.

Liquid dosage forms for oral administration may include pharmaceutically acceptable emulsions, solutions, suspensions, syrups, and elixirs containing inert diluents commonly used in the art, such as water. Such compositions may also comprise adjuvants, such as wetting agents, emulsifying and suspending agents, and sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents.

25

While the compounds of the invention can be administered as the sole active pharmaceutical agent, they can also be used in combination with one or more immunomodulators, antiviral agents or other antiinfective agents. For example, the compounds of the invention can be administered in combination with AZT, DDI, DDC or with glucosidase inhibitors, such as N-butyl-1-deoxynojirimycin or prodrugs thereof, for the prophylaxis and/or treatment of AIDS. When administered as a combination, the therapeutic agents can be formulated as separate compositions which are given at the same time or different times, or the therapeutic agents can be given as a single composition.

The foregoing is merely illustrative of the invention and is not intended to limit the invention to the disclosed compounds. Variations and changes which are obvious to one skilled in the art are intended to be within the scope and nature of the invention which are defined in the appended claims. From the foregoing description, one skilled in the art can easily ascertain the essential characteristics of this invention, and without departing from the spirit and scope thereof, can make various changes and modifications of the invention to adapt it to various usages and conditions.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

Compound represented by the formula:

5

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n represents 1 or 2;

10 R¹ represents alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl and 1-3 alkoxy carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, -CH2CONH2,

15 -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;

R² represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms;

25 R³ represents radicals of alkyl radical of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 5-8 ring members or cycloalkylmethyl radical of 3-6 ring members;

R4 represents aryl, benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member
30 heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals; or a radical of the formula

wherein A and B each independently represent O, S, SO or SO_2 ; R^6 represents deuterium, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms,

fluoro or chloro radicals; R^7 represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl, fluoro or chloro radicals; or a radical of the formula

$$Z \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^9$$

5 wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula

wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR^{21} ;

10

 R^{20} represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heteroaralkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms,

- heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, aminoalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, N-monosubstituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are radicals of alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl
- carbon atoms radicals, carboxyalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkoxycarbonylalkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or hydroxyalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms;
- R^{21} represents hydrogen radical or alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; or the radical of formula $-NR^{20}R^{21}$ represents a 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radical; and

 R^{22} represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or $R^{20}R^{21}N$ -alkyl radical of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms;

R10 represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms;

25

35

R¹¹ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, benzyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CCH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CCH₃ or -CH₂SCH₃ radicals or the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives thereof;

R¹² represents hydrogen, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms; and

- 10 R¹³ and R¹⁴ each independently represent hydrogen, hydroxy, alkoxy, 2-hydroxyethoxy, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-3 carbon atoms; or R¹² and R¹³ or R¹³ and R¹⁴ along with the carbon atoms to which they are attached represent 5-6 ring membered 15 heteroaryl or benzo radical, each of which is optionally substituted with at least one hydroxy or alkoxy radical of 1-3 carbon atoms.
- Compound of Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically
 acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

R1 represents alkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-3 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 3-4 carbon atoms, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, -CH2CH2CONH2, -CH2S(O)2NH2, -CH2SCH3, -CH2S(O)CH3, -CH2S(O)2CH3, -C(CH3)2SCH3, -C(CH3)2S(O)CH3 or -C(CH3)2S(O)2CH3 radicals; and

R² represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl or cycloalkylmethyl of 5-6 ring member carbon atoms radicals;

R³ represents alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkylmethyl of 3-6 ring members, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl radicals;

R4 represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 2-amino-benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-amino-

benzothiazol-6-yl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl or 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl radicals; or a radical of the formula

5

wherein A and B each represent O; R⁶ represents deuterium, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl or fluoro radicals; and R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl or fluoro radicals; or a radical of the formula

$$\mathbb{Z}_{\mathbb{N}}^{\mathbb{Z}}$$
 \mathbb{R}^{9}

10

wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R^9 represents a radical of formula

$$\frac{Y}{N} \times R^{20}$$
 $\frac{N}{N} \times R^{20}$
 $\frac{N}{N} \times R^{20}$
 $\frac{N}{N} \times R^{20}$
 $\frac{N}{N} \times R^{22}$

wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR^{21} :

 R^{20} represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, or N-mono-substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are alkyl radicals of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and

25

20

 R^{21} represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; or the radical of formula $-NR^{20}R^{21}$ represents pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-benzylpiperazinyl, morpholinyl or thiamorpholinyl radicals; and

2 ^

 \mathbb{R}^{22} represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms.

30

3. Compound of Claim 2, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

R1 represents iso-propyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 3-propynyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH2CONH2, -CH2SCH3, -CH2S(O)CH3, -CH2S(O)2CH3, -C(CH3)2SCH3, -C(CH3)2S(O)CH3 or -C(CH3)2S(O)2CH3 radicals;

R² represents isobutyl, n-butyl, CH₃SCH₂CH₂-, phenylthiomethyl, (2-naphthylthio)methyl, benzyl, 4-methoxyphenylmethyl, 4-hydroxyphenylmethyl, 4-

10 fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;

R³ represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;

15

20

R4 represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl or 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl radicals; or a radical of the formula

25 wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula

$$\frac{\mathbf{Y}}{\mathbf{N}} \mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{R}^{20}} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{N}}{\mathbf{N}} \mathbf{S}^{\mathbf{N}} \mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{R}^{20}} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{N}}{\mathbf{N}} \mathbf{S}^{\mathbf{R}^{22}}$$

wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR^{21} ;

30

R²⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, benzyl, 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperidinyl)ethyl, 2-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl, 2-(1-morpholinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-

thiamorpholinyl)ethyl or 2-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethyl radicals;

 ${\tt R}^{21}$ represents a hydrogen radical; and

5

15

- R²² represents methyl radical;
- R^{10} and R^{12} each represent a hydrogen radical;
- 10 R¹¹ represents hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, butyl, secbutyl, isobutyl, hydroxymethyl or hydroxyethyl radicals; and
 - R^{13} and R^{14} each independently represent hydrogen, hydroxy, methoxy or ethoxy radicals; or R^{12} and R^{13} or R^{13} and R^{14} along with the carbon atoms to which they are
- attached represent benzo radical, which is optionally substituted with at least one hydroxy or methoxy radical.
- 4. Compound of Claim 3 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n represents 1;
- R1 represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-
- 25 propynyl or -C(CH3)2S(O)2CH3 radicals;
 - R² represents benzyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;
- R4 represents phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-

benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl,

- 2.2-difluoro-1.3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1.4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl or 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals:
 - Rll represents a hydrogen radical; and

 R^{13} and R^{14} each independently represent hydrogen, hydroxy, methoxy or ethoxy radicals.

- 5. Compound of Claim 1 wherein said
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salt is hydrochloric acid
 salt, sulphuric acid salt, phosphoric acid salt, oxalic
 acid salt, maleic acid salt, succinic acid salt, citric
 acid salt or methanesulfonic acid salt.
- 10 6. Compound of Claim 5 wherein said pharmaceutically acceptable salt is hydrochloric acid salt, oxalic acid salt, citric acid salt or methanesulfonic acid salt.
- 7. Compound of Claim 1 which is

2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

20

35

- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-330 [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
 - 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

```
2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
     [{phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
10
     [[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
15
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
20
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
     (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
25
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(4-
    methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
30
    [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
    amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
35
    amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
```

```
2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
    amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
    amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
10
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
15
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
20
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
    [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
25
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
30
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
    (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
    2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-
    naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
35
     (phenylmethyl)propyl}-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
```

- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 5 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-{2R-hydroxy-3-10 [[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
 - 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
- 15 1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide; or
 - 2S-[[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide.

- 8. Composition comprising a compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 9. Method of inhibiting a retroviral protease 25 comprising administering an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.
- 10. Method of treating a retroviral infection comprising administering an effective amount of a composition of Claim 8.
 - 11. Method of preventing replication of a retrovirus comprising administering an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

- 12. Method of preventing replication of a retrovirus *in vitro* comprising administering an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.
- 5 13. Method of treating AIDS comprising administering an effective amount of a composition of Claim 8.

Inter onal Application No PC1/US 96/02684

		PC1/US 96/02684
A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER 1PC 6 C07K5/062 A61K38/55		
	,	
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both nati	onal classification and IPC	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
B. FIELDS SEARCHED		
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by IPC 6 C07K A61K	classification symbols)	
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the e	extent that such documents are includ	ed in the fields searched
		•
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name	of data base and, where practical, sea	urch terms used)
*		ė.
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category * Citation of document, with indication, where appropriat	e, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P,X WO,A,95 33464 (SEARLE & CO L (US); POTTS KAREN E (US); December 1995	;BRYANT MARTIN SMIDT MARY) 14	1-5,8-13
see claims; example 14		
WO,A,94 05639 (VERTEX PHARM (US); MURCKO MARK A (US); B	A ;TUNG ROGER D HISETTI GOV) 17	1-5,8-13
see claims; examples		
WO,A,95 06030 (SEARLE & CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US 2 March 1995		1-5,8-13
see claims; examples	•	W
	-/	·
X Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.	X Patent family me	mbers are listed in annex.
* Special categories of cited documents:	T later document publis	hed after the international filing date
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance		not in conflict with the application but ne principle or theory underlying the
"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date	cannot be considered	ar relevance; the claimed invention novel or cannot be considered to
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular cannot be considered	step when the document is taken alone ir relevance; the claimed invention to involve an inventive step when the
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		d with one or more other such docu- tion being obvious to a person stolled
P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	. *&* document member of	
Date of the actual completion of the international search		: international search report
24 June 1996	1 2. 07. 96	
Name and mailing address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentiaan 2	Authonzed officer	
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (- 31-70) 340-2040, Tir. 31 651 epo nl. Far: (- 31-70) 340-3016	Fuhr, C	

Form PCT 15A 210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

Inter onal Application No
PC i /US 96/02684

C.(Continu	non) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages		Relevant to claim No.
A	WO,A,94 04492 (SEARLE & CO; MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 3 March 1994 see claims; examples		1-5,8-13
A	WO,A,94 10134 (SEARLE & CO; MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 11 May 1994 see claims; examples		1-5,8-13
	••• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		

		. •	
	*		
		·. ·	
	•		

1

Int tional application No.

PCT/US 96/02684

Box I Observations where certain claims were f	found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)
This international search report has not been established	ed in respect of certain claims under Article 1.7(2)(a) for the following reasons:
t. X Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not requi	sired to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Please see Further Informat	ion sheet enclosed.
Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the international an extent that no meaningful international sea.	ial application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such arch can be carried out, specifically:
Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not	ot drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).
Box II Observations where unity of invention is I	lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)
This International Searching Authority found multiple	inventions in this international application, as follows:
As all required additional search fees were times searchable claims.	nely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all
As all searchable claims could be searches with of any additional fee.	thout effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment
3. As only some of the required additional search covers only those claims for which fees were	th fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report paid, specifically claims Nos.:
• .	
No required additional search fees were timely restricted to the invention first mentioned in t	y paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:
-	
Remark on Protest	The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
	No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

International Application No. PCT/US96/02684

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/210

Remark: As far as claims 10, 11, and 13 are directed to an in vivo method of treatment of the human/animal body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.

aformation on patent family members

Inter onal Application No PC:/US 96/02684

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent i memb		Publication date
WO-A-9533464	14-12-95	AU-B-	2651095	04-01-96
WO-A-9405639	17-03-94	AP-A-	390	02-08-95
		AU-B-	4852093	29-03-94
		BG-A-	99540	30-11-95
	•	CA-A-	2143208	17-03-94
	÷	CN-A-	1087347	01-06-94
		CZ-A-	9500587	13-12-95
		EP-A-	0659181	28-06-95
		FI-A-	951059	18-04-95
		HU-A-	71892	28-02-96
		JP-T-	8501299	13-02-96
		LT-A,B	917	25-11-94
		NO-A-	950876	08-05-95
		PL-A-	307858	26-06-95
		SK-A-	29395	13-09-95
WO-A-9506030	02-03-95	AU-B-	7669794	21-03-95
		EP-A-	0715618	12-06-96
WO-A-9404492	03-03-94	AU-B-	5347494	15-03-94
		CA-A-	2140929	26-02-94
		EP-A-	0656887	14-06-95
•		FI-A-	950650	14-02-95
•		JP-T-	8501288	13-02-96
		NO-A-	950533	13-02-95
WO-A-9410134	11-05-94	AU-B-	5547094	24-05-94
		CA-A-	2142997	11-05-94
		EP-A-	0666842	16-08-95